A relation of the voyage to Siam. Performed by six Jesuits, sent by the French king, to the Indies and China, in the year, 1685 : With their astrological observations, and their remarks of natural philosophy, geography, hydrography, and history ... / Publ
RELATION
OF THE
VOYAGE
TO
SIAM,
Performed by Six
JESUIT
Sent by the FRENCH KING to
INDIES and CHINA, in the Year 1685,
WITH THEIR
ASTROLOGICAL OBSERVATIONS,
and their REMARKS of Natural Philosophy, Geo-
graphy, Hydrography, and History.
Published in the Original, by the express Orders
of His most Christian Majesty.
And now made English, and Illustrated with
SCULPTURES.

LONDON:
Printed for J. Robinson, at the Golden-Lyon in
St. Pauls Church-Yard. 1688.
Book I.

A VOYAGE TO SIAM.

The First BOOK.

Since the time the King felled a Royal Academy at Paris, for improving Arts and Sciences within his Kingdom, the Members that compose it, have not hit upon any means more proper for accomplishing that Design, than the sending out of Learned Men to make Observations in foreign Countries, whereby they might correct the Geographical Maps, facilitate Navigation, and make Astronomy to its Perfection. In that Prospect, not a few of the Learned Men of that illustrious So-

[Title page verso]-p. 1
A Voyage to Siam.

Book I.

clety, were, by his Majesties Orders, sent into several Kingdoms: Some went into Denmark, others to England; some were sent to the Isle of Ceylon, and other Isles of America, Cape Verde, may, and to the chief Ports and Coasts of the Kingdom, whilst others in the Observatory at Home, kept pace, and entertained all necessary Correspondencies with them.

It was desired that an Occasion might offer of sending more Observers into several Parts of Europe, to the Isle of Paros, where they have fixed the first Meridian, the Egt-Indies, and chiefly into China, where it was known that Arts had flourished for these four thousand years; where there are Books upon all Subjects, and Libraries that may compare with the fairest in Europe, from which the Kings Bibliothec might be enriched.

This Desire grew stronger in the chief Members of the Academy, after they had conversed with Father Philip Couplet, a Flemish Jesuit, who had just arrived in the Eastern seas; and his way to Rome, whither he had been sent about the Affairs of the Mission.

The Marquis de Louvois, Minister and Secretary of State, who beheld the Affairs of War, and Oversight of the Kings Buildings, was likewise charged with the Concerns of Arts and Sciences, ordered, in his Majesties Name, the Members of the Royal Academy to draw up a Memoire of the most remarkable things they desired to be informed of from China, to be given and recommended to Father Couplet, who was to return this year following.

The Duke of Mogely, favoured also the Design with a great Zeal for Religion, and a Curiosity suitable to his Wit, calculated for Knowledge, and far above his years.

But the King surpausing all in Zeal for the Improvement of Arts and Sciences, especially of such, which in those Countries might most contribute to the Growth of Religion, being affected with the Necessity of Misions, was resolved to affix them with his Protection and Liberalities. He was informed by Father Couplet, that almost all the French Jesuits, who above thirty years since went to China with Father Alexander of Rhodos, were dead, labouring in the Millions of that Kingdom; that there were but a very few Missionaries remaining; that the Emperor, in the mean time, continued to them his Protection, and that in imitation of him, the Vice-Rays and Governours of Provinces were all very kind to them; and that in short, there was a great want of Gospel-Labourers, not only for cultivating the Christians, who are already very numerous there, but also for reaping the Fruit of the certain hopes, which at present more than ever, good men have of spreading the Faith in that vast Empire. He had already gone so far, as to assign a considerable Sum of Money for the French Jesuits who were to accompany Father Couplet; and all the care was, how they might be sent under his Majesties Authority, when Divine Providence presented a most favourable occasion for it.
Hardly was Father Couplet departed for Rome, when two Siames Mandarins, with a Priest of the Foreign Missions settled in Siam, named Monsieur de Vacher, arrived in France. They were sent by the Ministers of the King of Siam, to learn News of the Embassie which the King their Master had sent to his Majesty, with magnificent Prefents, on board a Ship belonging to the East-India Company, called the Sen of the East, which was reported to have been cast away.

His Majesty perceiving what Advantages the King of Siam made in seeking his Friendship, and that there was hopes besides he might turn Christian, if there were an Ambassador sent to him, resolv'd to do it; and by the same way sends Jesuits into China, which hath a great commerce with the Kingdom of Siam, from whence it is not above five or fix hundred Leagues distant.

The King having thereupon declared his Intentions to the Marquis de Lavige and Father de la Glace, they forthwith demanded of our Superiors, four Fathers at least, that might be capable of labouring in comfort with the Academy Royal, in the Improvement of Arts and Sciences, and at the same time employ themselves with the Missionaries of China in advancing the Christian Religion; adding, that they must needs be ready to depart within six weeks, in the Ship that was to carry the French Ambassador to Siam.

It was no hard matter for our Superiors to find men that were willing to contribute to the furthering of that design. Amongst many who offered themselves, fix were chosen, who, tho' of different Provinces, were happily at that time in the Jesuits College at Paris; as it Divine Providence had only brought them together for obtaining a happiness which they earnestly longed for. The Superior named to be over them was Father Fontene, who for eight years past taught the Mathematicks in that College. The other five were, Father Garabito, Father Comper, Father Defalque, Father Coeres and my Self.

So soon as the thing was resolv'd upon, we had private notice given us, to prepare for our departure within two Months at furthest. Next day we went together to Mont-Marte to thank God by the Mediation of the Holy Virgin and Holy Martyrs, for the favour that was done us, and to offer our selves up to Jesus Christ more particularly in that place, where St. Ignatius and his Companions made their first Vowes, and which is looked upon as the Cradle of the Society, that from its birth hath devoted it self in a most particular manner to Foreign Missions. That's the reason that they who constitute it, have ever since conformed themselves to that duty by a solemn Vow; so that every one thinking himself in particular destined to it, ought accordingly to prepare himself from his youth upward, by all the Exercises of Piety and Mortification, and by the study of the Sciences and long Voyages that may mollify him for it. And this is practised with so great a blazoning, that the same vigour of Spirit that was at first may be said still to be in the Order.
A Voyage to Siam.

Book I.

which had served in other Voyages, we had
Copies of them given us, and, they proved very
useful to us in our Sailing. They gave us very
good and ample Instructions concerning Navi-
gation, Architecture, and other Arts, concern-
ing the Books that were to be sent to France,
and the Observations that it would be proper for
us to make. In short, all the Members of
that Learned Academy, there was none who ap-
ppeared not in that affair with particular zeal and
application, seeing the success of it would not
a little contribute to the glory and satisfaction of
the King. All these Memos being examined
in several meetings of the Academy Royal, were
given in to us before our departure. And these
Gentlemen having promised to communicate
their Discoveries to us, we engaged our selves to
send them our Observations, to the end that
acting in comfort, and making our one Body of
Academics, some in France, and others in Chi-
na, we might joyfully labour in the encreasing and
improvement of Sciences, under the protection of
to great a Monarch.

In the mean time we were much taken up in
preparing all the Instruments that were necessary
for us; and seeing we were to leave Paris within
a Month, we had made for us in that time, two
Quadrants of ninety degrees, the one of eighteen
inches the Radius, and the other of twenty six;
three great Quadrants with Seconds, an Instru-
ment for finding out at the same time the right
Ascension and the Declination of Stars; an Equi-
nodital Dial that marked the Hours to the very
Minutes, having underneath a large Compass for
finding out all hours of the day the declination of


Divers instructions are given unto
them for the
Improvement of Arts and
Sciences.

They are delivered into
the Royal
Academy of Sci-
ences.

The design of our Voyage being made pub-
lic at Paris, the Members of the Academy,
who concerned themselves most in it, did us
the Honour to admit us into that Society, by a
particular Privilege; and we took our places
there some days before our departure. The most
proper means for executing the Orders of the
King were thought on, and it was resolved that
besides the Instructions which the Marques of
Lauron had prepared, to be given us Father Co-
plt, when he should return to China, and which
was for the most part written by our hands, the chief
Members of the Academy, should furnish us with
particular Memoirs relating to the Observations
that might be proper to be made in China, and
the things that were to be sent home to France,
as well for enriching the King's Library, as for
the improvement of Arts.

Every one of these Members took upon them-
seves to furnish us with such as concerned the
Arts and Sciences they were most versed in; and
we thereupon had several Conferences with
them. We agreed upon the Astronomical Ob-
ervations that we should make in China and on
our Voyages. We gave use of the Tables of the
Satellites of Jupiter, which have been made with
so great labour, and which at present serve for
determining the Longitudes of Places. They al-
so prepared us with several large Telescopes of 12,
25, 18, 25, 50, and eighty Foot, whereby we
were to leave some in the Observatory of Peking.
They imparted to us besides several Memoirs
in Natural Philosophy, Anatomy, and con-
cerning Plants. There were Sea-Charts of the
Coast we were to follow in the Kings Library,
which
A Voyage to Siam. Book I.

This Gentleman, well known in the Kingdom for his particular merit, and the Nobility of his family, was in his youth bred up a Catholic, but God did him the Grace to Convert him, and his Brothers, one after another, at different times. The last of all having for many years served in the Armies with the approbation of a brave Gentleman, and a good Officer, being at length employed with the World, and determines to work out his own salvation, put himself into our Society, where he lived and died like a Saint, having edited all that knew him by rare Examples of all sorts of Virtues, and especially of an heroic patience under the pains and trouble which he felt by the wounds that he had formerly received in the Wars. The Chevalier de Chamouni, from whom we are now speaking, was his elder Brother, at first he served at Land, where his singular Merit made him known, and particularly beloved of the King, whilst he was but young. He was afterwards sent to Tangier, to command the Main-guards of the Armies, and to instruct them in all Exercises necessary for Gentlemen who are to Command their Majesties' Ships. Since that he was made Captain of a Man of War, and Major General of the Kings Naval Forces in the Levant. His zeal for his Prince's Service hath nothing hindered his continual application to the service of God; and all gave him his due when they looked upon him as a Man of singular Prudence and Piety. Therefore it was that his Majesty, who proposed to himself chiefly the good of Religion, and the Conversion of the King of Siam by the Embassies which he resolved to send to him, pitched upon the Chevalier de Chamouni for so glorious

The arrival of the Chevalier de Chamouni at Brussel.

We arrived at Brussel, February 15th, and some days after Orders came from Court to harrass our Embarking, because the Season was already far spent. They were obeyed with so much diligence, that everything almost was in a readiness, when the Chevalier de Chamouni named by the King for the Embassy of Siam arrived at Brussel. This
A Voyage to Siam.

Book I.

We therefore Charge and Command Our most deare beloved Son the Count of Thoumide Admiral of France, our Vice-admirals and Lieutenant-General in our Naval Forces, Commanders of Squadrons of the same, particular Governors of our Towns and strong Places, Masters, Captains, and all our other Officers to whom it belongeth, to give to the said F. N. all the Aid, Favour and affiance that is needfull to him for the execution of these Preffents, without permitting any Lett or Hindrance to be given him that may retard his Voyage, for such is Our Will and Pleasure. In Witness whereof, We have caused Our Seal to be put to these Preffents; We Pray and Require All Kings, Princes, Potestates, States, Republicks, our Friends, Allies and Confederates, their Officers and Subjects to give the said F. N. all sort of succour and affiance for the accomplishment of a design which equally concerns the advantage of all Nations, without suffering anything to be excelled from him contrary to the liberty of his Pension, and the Customs and Rights of the Kingdom.

Given at Versailles January 28, 1685, and the two and fortieth year of our Reign. Signed Louis, and upon the seal, Colbert.

Though all things were ready for Embarking, and the Wind very fair for putting out to Sea, yet it behooved us to stay till the Frigate called the Matign, mounted with thirty Guns, which was lately ordered by the King to accompany the first Ship, that it might be fitted and made ready to follow us: when the news of these Orders came to Bryg, it caused so much joy amongst all that were
were to go the Voyage, and was received with
so great applause; that it was in every body
mouth, that now we could not but expect a pro-
persous Voyage. The truth is, without that as-
urance it would have been impossible to have car-
ried the Kings Presents, the Equipage of the Em-
basador, and of the Officers of the Ship, and
Passengers, and above all, necessary Provisions for
to long a Voyage, not to speak of a great many
Bales of all sorts of Curiosities which the King of
Siem had sent for, both from France and Eng-
land.

About that time we had advice that at Lisbon,
they had granted the Passports which had been
demanded for us, and which we earnestly desired;
because the differences that happened between Por-
tugal and the French Ecclesiastics not being as yet
made up, we were in fear lest the Portuguese Offi-
cers might from thence take occasion to stop us
on our way. Monsieur de Saint Remi extraordinary
Ambassador from the King in Portugal, who
very well knew the Kings mind as to that, took
notice of it in a discourse he made to the King of
Portugal for obtaining the Passports. These were
his very words.

SIR,

I have by the last Courier from France recei-
ved Orders, to acquaint your Majesty with
the resolution the King my Master has of sending
by sea an Ambassador to the King of Siem, in
consequence with the Civilities of that Prince;
and that taking advantage of that occasion, he'll
send on board the same Man of War six French
Jesuits who are to go from Siem to Macao in China.

Thir
With great joy do I acquaint my self of the Commands of the greatest King in Christendom, in addressing my self to your Reverence, to recommend to you for our Father's Subjects Men of extraordinary Merit and Capacity, that under your Protection they may carry to China and Tartary, the knowledge of the true Faith, and get from thence all the observations of Astronomy, and all the knowledge of the Arts and Sciences of a Nation, for which the Reverend Father Philip Cooper, whose Majesty had the pleasure to see here, hath wrought in him a very particular Efficacy. All the slain besides a great zeal and rare virtue, have considerable advantage as to Languages and Sciences, and the skill they have in the Mathematics, hath made his Majesty make choice of them for his Mathematicians, for which he hath given them all Letters Patent under the Great Seal of the Commonwealth. Your Reverence will have the satisfaction, by means of these Fathers to contrive a kind of Commerce, in favour of the Sciences, between two of the most powerful Sovereigns of the World, and the greatest protectors of Sciences. There is to great a resemblance between the Prudence and Happines of their Government, the strength and number of their Armies, the economy and good order of their States, the Blessing God gives their undertakings, the Magnificence of their Courts, the greatness and nobleness of their thoughts, that it would seem those two admirable Princes find nothing upon Earth so Great and August as themselves, and being both born born for the Glory of their age, and the welfare of their people, ought to be as much united by the same heroic virtues and qualities which they have received from Heaven, as they are separated by the vast Space of Seas and Land that divide their Territories on Earth. May the Supreme Lord of all Kings and Emperors, who hath made them both the Defenders of the true Worship of God, and Protectors of his Altars, give them also the same thoughts as to Religion, the same zeal for the propagation of the true Faith, and the same endeavors in the publication and practice of the Gospel, that the great Emperor of China may not be inferior to ours in that only essential point of true Grandeur, which is wanting to the Dignity of his Person, and the Happiness of his Reign, all holy and zealous persons of this flourishing Kingdom, wherein Louis the Great does so greatly establish the Unity of the Catholic Faith, Virtue and Piety by his Examples, his Cares, his Edicts and continual liberalities, incessantly beg of Heaven the same Grace for your great Emperor: We continually offer up our Prayers and Sacrifices to the true God for that. We cannot believe that so many Virtues as he already possesseth, will be for ever without a reward, for want of the Virtues of Christianity, with which we hope he will confronate that great Morit, which procures him so fair a Reputation all over the Earth. I beseech you R. F. that for the satisfaction of our Great King, which God hath given to Europe for a defender and restorer of the true Faith, and whom according to all Prophecies he designs for the destruction of Mahometism, you would still give us
In the best information you can, of the Virtues, Sentiments and Actions of your great Emperor, for whom he hath already conceived so particular and entire. I likewise adjure you to Proteche, Affidavit and Favour, as much as lies in your power, to those Zealous and Learned Missionaries whom he hath sent you, and at whose Head he has placed Father Franques, whose merit you know, and who was looked upon by all the Learned Mathematicians of the Royal Academy of Sciences, that is here entertained by the Liberalties of his Majesty, as an extraordinary Man, and one that was an honour to their Nation. They bring you all the Observations and Curiosities of the Sciences of Europe in their greatest Perfection, and are sent to you as pledges of other greater matters that his Majesty would do, and without doubt will do hereafter for the satisfaction of your Great Monarch, and of your self in particular, so soon as he hath heard how his Mathematicians have been received and treated in this place and what aids and assistance have been given them for putting in execution the orders that are enjoyned them. I cannot express to your Reverence what advantages shall ensue from the sending of these Fathers to you, if it please God to give a Blessing to it. Since they all set out from Court, and the Capital City of this Realm, where they have been bred for some time, and highly considered for their Merit: they will acquaint you with many things that will content your zeal and curiosity, better than I can relate them in writing. Above all things I beg of your Reverence to believe them, when they assure you that no Man living is more respectfylly and more cordially than I am.

S

One day after they adjusted the number of those that were to go in the Ship with the Ambassador: Besides the Abbot of Clugy, who is well known in France by his Birth and Merit, and who was to continue with the King of Siam in quality of Ambassador until his Baptism, in case he should be converted. The two Van der Zwaanim, M. van der Vecht, who came with them into France, four other Churchmen, and the six Jewish, were also taken on Board. M. de Vauvilliers commanded the Ship: he is one of the oldest and ablest Sea-Captains the King has, and has distinguished himself on several occasions, both in the Channel against the Dutch, and in the Mediterranean in the War of Maffia, during twenty years that he hath served at Sea, having never missed a Campaign wherein he was not actually in his Majesties Service. We are particularly obliged to him for his Civilities and the good Office he did us during our whole Voyage in such a manner as engages us to the highest acknowledgment. M. Girian was our second Captain: we had two Lieutenants, M. de Forbis, and M. de Gisin, and an Ensign called M. de Choumroge.
A Voyage to Siam. Book I.

Of the twelve Gentlemen named by the King to wait on the Ambassador, three were put on Board of it; and the rest of the Frigat Commanded by Monsieur Joyer, Lieutenant of the Port of Brith, who had already made several Voyages to the Indies.

In fine, the day of Embarking being come, on the frith of March my Lord Ambassador accompanied by the Count of Chatillon-Renault Commander of a Squadron, and most of the Nobility and Gentry that were then at Brith, went into the Kings Challoppe, and so on Board, with sound of Trumpets. Monsieur de Vendieros with all the Officers at the Head of the Soldiers and Seamen were in readiness to receive him on Board with the Colours, Streamers and Pendants abroad. Upon his entry the Ship filleted him with thirteen Guns, and the Frigat with nine. The Companies of both Vessels by their many reiterated Huzzas, showed the joy they had to perform the Voyage under a Commander of so great worth; all the day following was allowed for preparing to be gone.

We weighed Anchor in the night time, and Saturday morning, the third of March by break of day made sail. So in leaving France we parted with the sweetness and repose of a Religious life, in which till then we had enjoyed, that we might go to the end of the World, to find an occasion of glorifying God and conferring our selves to the Conversion of Infidels, in profession of the Orders laid upon us by our great Monarch.

As we put out of the Road of Brith we had a fair wind; but it failing by that time we went seven or eight Leagues from the Port, about noon.

Book I. A Voyage to Siam.

Soon we dropped Anchor, until five or six a clock in the Evening the wind blowing again from the same Quarter, we again for Sail.

The entry and coming out of the Galleys at Ships put out from Brith, is a very difficult passage, by reason of hidden works which run out a good way into the Sea, on both sides of the Shore; but our Pilots being well acquainted with the Coast made no People to put out in the night time. From that time till within five or six Degrees of the Line, we had as good weather, and as favourable winds as we could have desired; Divine Providence taking pleasure, it seems, to favour a Voyage undertaken for the sake of Religion, in a time when the most expert Sea-Commanders were of Opinion that we had let slip the Season proper for setting out by three whole Weeks. We had at first to fight a wind on Poop, that with a single Sail abroad we made above three-fourths Leagues in four and twenty hours. So that without any danger we doubled Cape Assan and Cape Finglass so dreadful to our Seamen, because of the frequent Storms that arise about those places. The truth is, we found a very rough and running Sea there.

Tuesday the eighth, at the heighth of Cape Finglass, we saw a Dutch Vessel standing in to the Channel of England which had been forced to lie by and drive because of the contrary winds. Both our Pilots and Officers assured us that Ships were many times above three weeks before they could double that Cape.

They who have been at Sea well know how great trouble and sickness Men endure, the first time they meet with a rough Sea; but it is impossible.
A Voyage to Siam.

Book I.

It was not surprising that those who never felt the sickness of the former sea sickness, found it quite bearable with a violent Head-ache, the Stomach reaching, the Heart, and it would seem that the fatal vomiting of the ship's crew, the whole frame and constitution of the body, such pains as caused the Bowels. We were all of us grievously tormented with this Sea-sickness for the first five or six days.

From that time forward until we arrived at Siam we found Masts for most part every day, and I make no doubt but that the happy success of our Voyage ought to be attributed to that augury. Sacrifice which was so often offered up on Board, and to which all came with singular Devotion.

There passed no Sunday nor Holy-day whereat the clergy did not participate in the Holy Mysteries. This zeal was the effect of the good examples of the Lord Ambassador, who communicated once every eight days with extraordinary Humility and Piety. Every Holy-day and Sunday before publick Vespers which were sung with much Devotion, the secular and regular Churchmen by turns made a Sermon to the Ships Company.

A Jesuit took the care upon him of catechising the Officers, men, Soldiers, and Seamen, three times a week. That exercise was begun and ended by a Spiritual Hymn, sung by two Seamen who had pretty good Voices, and all the rest made answers upon their notes about the Main-mast. Those good examples, the regular instructions and exercises of Piety, besides the visiting of the Sick, and the small alms that were given them, several times a day, so wrought upon the hearts of those poor people, that there was none of them almost but that made a general Confession, and came to the Sacrament on the principal Holy-days.

Before we came to the Cape of Good-Hope, we found under a little calm and contrary wind, which the Turk made the Ambassador resolve to have a strong Gale. We were not rewarded by the honour of the Holy Virgin, that by her intercession we might obtain favourable weather, because the hearts which are commonly left in those places, began to occasion many Disasters in the Ship.

One of the Jesuits laid hold on that occasion to The Devotion to introduce on Board a laudable custom of laying on of the Litanies of the most Holy Virgin, which is practised on Board the ships that are Commanded by the Marshal of France, with mixed Soldiers, and as many Sea-men divided into two Companies upon the Poop and Fore-castle began that Devotion a little before the first watch was set in the Evening, and within a few days, all were ready to join in it, so that upon our return it was made, as it were, a publick exercise of Obligation, which was performed zealously, that neither cold nor rain could hinder it.

To all these Holy Practices we added the Chapels. Our Pater took the pains to divide himself into several parts of the Ship to cause it to be said, and God to bless their zeal, that there was hardly any Seaman or Soldier but who every day said his Beads. Besides the time that we allowed to publick instruction, we daily paid our Devotions together, and we had an hour of conference about the affairs of Conscience; the rest of the day was employed in study with much application and industry as if we had been in our Colleges.
A Voyage to Siam. Book I.

These were our ordinary exercises during the whole Voyage.

Sunday the eleventh we put in sight of the Isles of Madeira, where we plainly observed a great deal of Snow upon the hill that was nearest to us. After noon three small English Vessels returning into Europe paid to the reward of us; it was thought they came from the Convenies, because they had not as yet halted in their Boats. Much thereabouts we met with the Trade-winds so much desired by the Seamen, and so agreeable to all people; being winds that blow always one way between N. and E. the Ship does not require much working; besides being temperate they qualify the heats of the Zones, which otherwise would be intolerable. They are commonly met with about the Latitude of Madeira. The Sea then becomes smooth, and the wind fresh and fixed, Ships carry a great deal of Sail, and make commonly between forty and fifty Leagues from noon to noon without any ruling of the Ship or Sea; so that if Sailing were never more troublesome nor dangerous, Voyages to the Indies would be long and pleasant recreations.

The thirteenth we discovered the Isle of Palmes and sailed within four or five leagues of it, according to the reckoning of our Pilots: there we called to mind the happy lot of Father Ignatius Awêlde and his nine and thirty Companions all Jesuits, who going together to preach the Gospel in Brazil, had all the happiness to die in sight of this Isle, which was literally to them a矔fortunate Island, since they found the Palm of Martyrdom, which they were going to look for in the New World. They were all put to death in hatred of the Faith by Calvinist Pirates, who having made themselves Masters of the Ship wherein they were, called the St. James, put them all to death either by Water or Sword, to hinder, as they said, their Popish the declared Enemies of their Reformation, from going to infect the Barbarous with their pernicious Doctrine.

One and all of us envied the happy lot of these generous Defenders of the Catholic Faith, and would have been ravished to have furnished our course for so Holy a Cause: but it is not just to desire the Crown before one hath run the Race. We saw also the Isle of Brazil the most Western Island of the Convenies, where our Geographers have placed their first Meridian, afterwards we doubled Cape Verd, and the Isles of that name, which are ten in number.

According as we drew nearer and nearer to the Line, we took pleasure to observe that as the Stars of the North Pole bore the chief of the Arctie Pole were elevated over our heads, of all the new Stars which we discovered to the South, we were at first most taken with those of the Cruisers, so called, because the chief four are so disposed that they make a kind of cross. The biggest of all is twenty seven degrees from the Pole; by these Seamen steer their Course, and sometimes take their Latitude. Seeing our Course stood still on that way, and that we daily discovered new Stars, we had time enough to consider them, and to compare that new Region of the Firmament with the Astronomical Map of Father Pandur; but we found little or no conformity between them.

That Map needs much to be reformed, and one might begin with the Cruisers, the Arctie

C 4

The Maps of the South part of the Heavens are not exact.
A Voyage to Siam. Book I.

whereof are more unequal in the Firmament than in the Map. The Fix and Centaur are so care-
lessly and unfortunately set down in it, that with
much ado can one know them in the Heavens, tho,
in the mean time, they render the place they
possess very bright and sparkling, by reason of
the great number of Stars that compose them,
and which seem to make but one Constellation.
But in the Map it is nothing left, where the two
Constellations, can, at most, pass but for ordi-
mary. The stars of the Southern Triangle, seem in-
deed to stand in the Firmament in that very
formation which the Map gives them as to one an-
other; but they seem to be ill placed in relation
to other Constellations. The stars of the Bull are
nothing near so fair, as they appear to be in the
Map, though the disposition of them be much
the same, the Crane, in my Opinion, is the Con-
stellation the best represented of any on that side,
and to see it once upon the Map, is enough to
make one immediately find it out in the Hea-
vens: The Box, the Apidae or Bird of Paradise,
and the Chameleon, tho they be small, yet are pretty
well set down. Something also would be reformed
in the Figure and Situation of the Cranes and
other Meridional Constellations, wherein many
more defects might be found out by means of in-
struments. If we had the pleasure, as you may
see, to observe the graver faults, we had the
trouble at the same time, that we could not tell
how to remedy them; the totting of the Ship not
suffering us to make use of our Instruments, for
reforming that Map, or to make it a new one, which
otherwise would not have been hard to be done.
However we made a new one only by the eye,
which,

Book I. A Voyage to Siam.

which, though it be not so defective as the for-
mers, yet cannot be so exact as such works re-
quire to be, wherein one cannot well succeed
without the assistance of Instruments.

This was our usual Employment for the first
hours of the night and an hour or two before day,
when the Sky was clear. However that was not
all our diversion; for in the day time we had the
pleasure of Fishing. It is true we did not be-
gin to find plenty of Fish till we came within five
or six Degrees of the Line. Before that we had
taken a kind of Tortoise which the Seamen call a
Turtle, weighing about three or four score pound
weight, which was brought to Table three or
four times, several ways dress’d. Many liked the
taste of it pretty well, and others could hardly en-
dure the smell thereof. But in the whole space of
twelve Degrees; that is to say of 120 Leagues
on each side of the Line, we daily saw, for
most part, a vast quantity of all sorts of Fish, and
epecially of Perseus which swarm in hordes about
the Ship. To fee the filling of these, which
was the most common, forced to recreate us af-
ter our Studies. In several parts of the Ship, and
epecially in the Head, there were many Se-
men with each a harping-Iron, which is a kind
of a big Javelin fastened to the end of a Line about
the thickness of one little finger. As the Perseus
patt by them, they struck them so sly, but some-
times they pierced them through and through.
When once they had darded the Harping-Iron, the way
of they left it flicking in the water, keeping hold of catching
possit by the Line to which it was fastened, and which they
vared out to play the wounded Fish, until
the Perseus weakened by the loss of blood, suffered

Plenty of Fish about the Equatorial Line.
A Voyage to Siam.

Book I.

A Voyage to Siam.

Iron, the reef follow it by the track its blood makes which it fleeth in abundance, and never leave it till it be dead, that so they may devour it. I was confirmed in that opinion; for one day a Perroff which had been thronged keep so great a struggling, that it wrought the Harping-Iron out of its belly, and escaped out of our hands. At that time there were many more about the Ship; but so soon as this which had been wounded, fled for it, all the rest disappeared, and there was not one more to be seen all that day.

Now we are upon Fishing, I must here speak of what sport we had that way, and of the fish we saw, which are not so well known in Europe. I will begin with the Shark, because it is a fish often seen, and most-easily taken. We have sometimes taken six of them in one day. This fish is a kind of Sea-Dog which hath a very large and flat head, the mouth very low because of the lower jaw which lies a great way under the upper; so that when it would bite, it is forced to lie upon one side, and sometimes upon the back. Those we took were about four foot long, and very thick, a little below the head the skin of it is a kind of chagrin, that hath a very rough grain, with fix openings on each side, which are thin by mean of a kind of very thin skin, that hangs it instead of Gills. It is certainly the most voracious Animal living: tho’ it hath been throng with the Hook three or four times, and the mouth of it be all bloody, yet still it returns again with the same greediness, until it be taken, or hath carried away the bait. Now if it chance to fling a Man, he is gone, it never quits it hold, and therefore it is, say some, that the Sea-men call it Shark.

Perroffs defe
vour one ano
tier.

I have been often told, nay and have observed in a Voyage that I made to America, that when one of these Fish is mortally wounded, and has strength enough to struggle it self off of the Harping-Iron,
A Voyage to Siam.  Book I.

Shark. The cause of that extraordinary greedi-ness is the greatness of its Liver; it consists of two lapses, drawing round at the ends, being a foot and a half long and four fingers broad, but not at all thick; besides it hath but one gut, and that a very short one too and almost entire. We found one with a piece of Board in its belly four fingers broad and a foot and a half long. It hath no Lungs, and the heart of it is placed in a concavity made by the concourse of two bones near the head. It hath three rows of teeth, of which some do bend, some are flat, and others of different Figures, nay it hath also a row of triangular teeth which are very thin, and terminate like a Saw. There are three concavities in the head of it, one on each side, which contain a white substance that hath some consistence; it afterwards grows hard, and is called the Shark bone; our Chirurgeons attribute great virtues to it, and I take their word. The third concavity, that is in the middle of the head holds the Brain, which is much about the bigness of a pullets egg. The substance thereof appeared to us to be very whitish, and it was with much ado that we could distinguish the calvarium body, from the medulla. It hath a very little Cerебel, and between the Brain and the Cerebel, a very soft Glandule which bears upon two other smaller ones.

The Shark is always attended by several small Fish that make its Retinue, and which adhere so inseparably to him, that they will chaunt rather to be taken with him than to abandon him: They are called his Pilot fish, because it is pretended, that they serve him for Guides to lead him to those places, where they discover any prey. It is a vulgar error to imagine that these fish perform that good office to him without any interest; they only lick to clothe him, because of the food they find there. For besides that, they make the bell of the reversion of his prey, they lick clothe to his skin by means of a cartilaginous little skin of an oval Figure, which they have upon the head and which is frayed and armed with a great many fibres, wherewith belike they attract some juice; and that is the reason why some call them flacking fish. When they have a mind to swim off, they must keep without reach of his teeth, otherwise they would fare no better than other fish do. I have seen some Shark attempts to catch them, and it was well for the flacking fish that they got as soon as possibly they could to their usual Sanctuary. When they are pulled up with the shark, it is no easy matter to separate them; if they be put upon a Table, they will lick to it, as they do to the Sea-Dog; and in that situation which is natural to them, the under-side of their Gills and their Belly is upwards. There are two kinds of them, some white, which are much of the shape of a Roach fish, and others blackish that are very small; of these last chiefly I speak. We found also a great many Batoons thereabouts which are the implacable enemies of the Flying-fish, whom they continually pursue. It is the best part of Fish that we took in all our Voyage; they are about the bigness of our largest Carp; but much thicker, have no scales, but the skin a little silvered, and the back marked with long, obscure, and gold-like streaks. We also took Adascos, so called by the Portuguese because
A Voyage to Siam.

Book I.

A voyage to Siam. 31

The day or March towards the third Degree of

The weather being very clear that day, we

We met not with so many Boats as Sailors

However, we saw many flakes of them rise up

They meet with certain Birds of prey alo that fall upon them, when they

One of these Fish being hody purpised on day

That are the sorts of fish that we saw most

We had had the Sun sleek, that is to say, just over head the nine and twenti-

Page 20 of 196
whole weeks time, that most part of them falling sick, thirty three of about forty eight that were aboard died; among whom were the Captain and two chief Mates: so that the surviving eleven not being able to sail the ship to the Port where they were bound, were obliged to put in to the Ille of Samark, and to look for Men there to carry them to the Road of Batavia, where we found them come in.

Our Victuals and Water were not spoiled, nor did we hardly suffer any thing by bad weather nor calms; and the heats of the torrid Zone appeared not to us to be much greater than the heats that are felt in France about Macon. Thus without any inconvenience we passed the Line the seventh of April, being Saturday, with an easterly wind, about the three hundred and fifty eight Degree of Longitude. It being already late, the solemn Ceremonies which Seamen never fail to perform upon that occasion, was put off till next morning after Mass. It is an invention devised by the Masters, Mates, and other Officers of Ships, to get a little Money to buy fresh Provisions for themselves and company, in which they give, (but very improperly) the name of Baptism.

The Ambassador would have no Ceremonies acted that did any ways allude to sacred things. Everyone gave what he thought fit; and the rest came off for some hundreds full of Water which were thrown upon their Bodies; but being very hot there, they were not much the worse for it.

From the time we past the Line, till we came to the Tropick of Capricorn, we had bad winds, and sometimes none at all; for we were becalmed about about the twentieth degree of Semi-Latitude, where we suffered the forching heats of the torrid Zone until the thirtieth of April that we past the Tropick.

After that we had for most part changeable winds and so faire that a small Boat might have followed us without any danger. It is true that under the Zone we met two or three times with those boisterous Gulfs which the Portuguese call Tordas or Tordas; because they are always accompanied with Thunder and Lightning; but seeing we had them a little off us, they did us but little harm, and made us run a good way on head.

During one of these Tordas, there appeared at two several times upon the Masts, Yards, and Guns of our Ship, some of those little Fires of a Pyramidal figure, which the Portuguese call the fire of St. Thomas, and not St. Helme. Some Seamen look upon them as the Soul of the Saint of that name, whom then they invoke with all their might, joined hands, and many other marks of respect. Nay, there are some of them, who take them for a certain sign that the Storm will soon be over, without doing them any damage. These are the very same Fires which heretofore the Pagans adored under the name of Celos and Boleus; and it is strange that such Superstition should be introduced into amongst Christians.

March 7th. About Noon we discovered one of those Phenomena called a weather-ball or Ox Eye, because of its Figure. They are looked upon commonly at Sea as certain forrunners of a Storm: It is a great round Cloud opposite to the Sun, and distant from him eighty or ninety Degrees, and upon it the Sun paints the colours of the Rainbow.
but very lively. They appear, perhaps to have no great altitude and brightness, because that weather-gall is enshrouded on all sides with thick and dark clouds. However it be, I dare say that I never found any thing fatter than the Progog-licks of that apparition. I formerly saw one of them when I was near the Continent of America, but which was followed, as this was, with fair and serene weather, that lasted several days.

Since we are speaking of Phenomena's or Apparitions, I must not here forget a pretty rare one which we observed between the Line and Tropic of Capricorn; and which seems to be difficult to be explained. It was one of those great whirl winds which the Spaniards call Spon or water-dragons. They are like to long tubes or cylinders made of thick Vapours which with one end touch the clouds, and with the other the Sea that seems to boil all round it. Much after this manner are these Dragons formed.

At first you see a great thick cloud, from which a part breaks off, and this separated part being driven by an impetuous wind, infinitely changes its shape, and takes the figure of a long pillar, which descends as low as the Surface of the Sea; continuing to much longer in the air, as the violence of the Wind retains it there, or as the lower parts of it support those that are above. So when that long column of water comes to be cut by the Yard or Masts of the Ship entering into it, when one cannot avoid the same; or the motion of the wind comes to be interrupted by surifying the neighbouring air with Canon or Muzzle-shot: the water being then no longer supported, falls in prodigious quantity, and immediately medially all the Dragons is dissipated. They do Which are all they can at Sea to avoid them, it being dangerous to get too near them in their way, not only because of the water which falls into the Ship, but also by reason of the sudden violence and extraordinary weight of the whirlwind that blows it, which is able to unmoor the greatest Ships, and even put them in danger of being loft. Though at a distance these spouts from them to be pretty small, and like to pillars of fix or seven foot diameter, they are nevertheless of far greater extent. I saw two or three of them near the Berlingue in Portugal, within a Pitoli-shot of me; and they seemed to me to be above an hundred foot in circumference.

We observed besides other Phenomena not much different from these last: they are called Siphons, because of their long figure pretty like in shape to some Pumps: They appear about Sun-rising and Sun-setting, towards the same place where the Sun then is. They are long and thick clouds environed with other clear and transparent ones; and fall not; but in progress of time are all confused together, and by little and little extinguished, whereas the Dragons are impetuously driven, left a long while, and are always accompanied with rain and whirlwinds, which make the Sea to boil and cover it with froth.

The Rainbow of the Moon in this place is extraordinary, have far more lively colours than those that are found in France. But the Sun forms rare ones upon the drops of Sea-water which are driven by the wind like a very small Rain, or like fine dust when two waves beating against one another break. When one looks down upon these last from a high place...
A Voyage to Siam. Book I.

they seem to be reversed, and sometimes it happens that a cloud passing over it, and being ready to disolve into Rain, another Rainbow is formed, the extremeties whereof seem to be continued with the extremeties of the reversed Iris, and it makes a Circle of Rain-bow almost entire.

The Sea hath its Phenomena as well as the Air, of which many times appear upon it, especially betwixt the Tropicks: We have seen it sometimes in the night-time covered all over with sparks, when it is a little high and the water breaks with a topping Sea: we observed also a great light sufficiently to be seen from the Ship, especially if the wind be clear, and the Sea of such a nature as to cast a reflection to the Eye, as if there was a flaming Fire in the Sea; and if any thing were thrown into the Sea, it glittered and shone all over. I think the cause of that light need not be当下 the Sea be searched for, but in the very nature of the Sea-water itself, which being full of Salt, Nitre, and more particularly of that water whereby the Chlamsins make the chief part of the Pyriforms, which being agitated is immediately inflamed and appears Luminous, ought, also by the same reason to partake when it is put into motion. So small a matter is enough to make fire come out of Sea-water, that handling a Line or small Rope that hath been dipped in it, one will force out an infinite number of sparks like to the light of Glow-worms that is to say, lively and billowy.

It is not only when the Sea is in agitation that these glancings are to be seen, we saw of them near the Line, in a dead Calm after Sun-set: they seemed to us to be like a vast number of small flashes of faint Lightning coming out of the Sea.

Book I. A Voyage to Siam.

and immediately after disappearing. The cause of that we attributed to the heat of the Sun, who having in a manner impregnated and filled the Sea in the day time with an infinite number of igneous and luminous Spirits, these Spirits uniting together in the evening, that they might get out of the violent State wherein they were forced by the Sun, endeavoured in his absence to regain their liberty, and formed those little flashes as they made their escape by the favour of the night.

Besides these transient glances of a minutes continuance, we saw others also during Calms, which might be called permanent, because they are not dispersed as the former were. There are of them of different sizes and shapes, round and oval above a foot and a half diameter, which pass along the Ships side, and were kept in view above two hundred paces, by what one could guess in seeing them pass nine or ten paces from the Ships side. They were thought to be only small or some unknown Substancc, which by some natural cause or other unknown to us might be formed in the Sea. Some would needs have had them to be Fish asleep and these glitter naturally. It is true that twice in the Morning we had seen above twenty such glittering things following one another in a straight line, and shaped like our Fikes; may any who had been much at Sea, take them to be real fish, but one cannot be positive as to that.

Let us now pursue our Course again, the tenth of May in the morning we made a small English Ship, which hailed and spoke to the Malgack that was nearer it than we, she was returning from
from the Isles of America, and going to take in Slaves at Madagascar. They did what they could to keep up with us, but the wind being good, and we carrying much Sails, the same day we left sight of her.

May 17. We were got into the 23d. Degree of South Latitude, and the 19th. of Longitude, according to our Mates reckoning. There we began to see Fowl of various shapes and Weeds with great greenish Ruffles ten or twelve foot long which they call Trunks, because their flesh grows upon the stalk where it ends in leaves of the same colour, represents pretty well the shape of an Elephants Trunk. These weeds are a kind of herb inclining to green, not unlike to Hay, whereas the spiggs are very long and interwoven one within another. Some think that these weeds come from the bottom of the Sea being by the Waves forced from thence, and raised to the surface of the water. Others have them to grow in the water, because they see them far out at Sea, and they cannot believe that the Sea can be so agitated as to carry its waves to the bottom and so beat off the weeds from thence. Besides that they are found in so great plenty upon the surface of the Sea, that it looks like a great Meadow. Lastly others maintain, and that is the Opinion which seems to me most plausible and conform to truth, that these weeds come from the neighbouring Coasts, from whence the waves force them so that they are carried out into the open Sea, but not very far from Land, either by the Tydes, Currents, or the prevailing winds. Upon that postulam it was that Christopher Columbus so famous for his Discoveries in America, seeing one night the Sea about his Ship all covered over with these weeds, encouraged his Men who thought themselves lost, taking those weeds for Flata, and promised to make them suddenly see Land; which accordingly he did two days after.

These extraordinary Birds, Trunks and Weeds, are the first signs of ones approaching the Cape. This shows that Men have intimations of it at a pretty good distance, seeing the first time that we saw them, we were in the nineteenth degree of Longitude, and the thirty third of South Latitude, that is to say, that we were near three hundred Leagues from the Cape of Good Hope.

They said that if instead of keeping along the Coast of Africa, as we did, we had stood out to Sea, to the Westward, we had met with those Signs farther off at Sea. This made me judge that the Currents that carry them along with them run stronger towards the West than North. We found the same things two days after we set out from the Cape of Good Hope, becalming away East South-East, but in far greater quantity. That continued all the third day, though we had a good wind, and made a great deal of way.

The days following we saw the same Birds in a greater number, which surprising us not till we were got a great way beyond the Cape. Some proceeding to the Cape of Good Hope.
white below, except the tip of their wings which appears to be of a Velveted-black, and therefore the Portugese call them *Mangue de veinho*, Velvet flowers. After these we saw Flocks of others somewhat less than the former: The Portugese call them *Bordas*, because they are of an Ash-coloured grey. I shall not speak of certain big Fowls which because of their whitenesse may be called Sea-Swans, nor of the Ravens and Rooks, which are to be found in these places, nor yet of a kind of Birds which they call *Bobths*, because they are so little upon their guards, that they suffer themselves to be taken with the hand.

The North-wind blowing much stronger, on the twenty eighth we were obliged to lye under a Main Course for fear of running ashore, which we did not think to be far off. Indeed next day about noon a Sea-man that was aloft to look out, with all his force cried *Land, Land*, and presently came down to ask of my Lord Ambassador the reward which he had promised to him who should first make *Land*. He confidently affirmed that he had made it before in the Morning, not daring to fly for, because he was not very sure of it, but that at present it was past all doubt. Nevertheless hardly any body could discern the Mountain which he showed, and it was a long while before they would believe him. But, at length, three or four hours after we easily saw the Mountain of the Cape of Good Hope, which might be fifteen or twenty Leagues a head of us.

Next day, the one and twentieth, the day of our Lord Ascension, after we had said our usual Prayers and sung Mass to thank God for the good success of our Voyage; we viewed the Land with our Glasses, and saw it distinctly, not being above three Leagues off. How Barbarous and Barren ever it seemed to be to us, it was nevertheless a delightful sight for men who had seen no Land from the Canary Islands, which we sailed by the thirteenth of March.
THE Cape of Good-Hope, as those that come from Europe make it, is a long Ridge of Mountains reaching from North to South, and ending in a Point in the Sea. The first two which we made at, ten Leagues distance from that Point, are the Mountains of the Table, and of the Lynn. We made the Table Land first, and it is called by that Name because the Top of it is very flat, and much resembles a Table. The Lynn-Land or Mountains is so called, because it hath a great deal of
A Voyage to Siam.

Book II.

Of the Shape of a Lyon, couched upon the he.

ly. Though it ran farther out into the Sea than the other, yet we did not for it till after; at a
distance it would seem that they were but one
ingle Mountain, and, indeed, they are not very
remote. At the Foot of these Mountains a great
Bay of an Oval Figure runs up towards the East,
ce or three Leagues within Land; it is almost
two Leagues over at the Mouth, and about nine
in compass. On the South side towards the
Mountains it is all a fine Coast, every where else
it is dangerous near Shore. The Commissary
General of the East India Company, of whom
we have much to say in the sequel, told us one
day, that he was many times afraid, finding us
hard to go near to Shore, upon the Tacks we
made, he judged that he was thinking to fire a
Gun with a Bullet, to give us warning by that
Signal, that we should keep off, and wait for a
tider Wind.

Towards the Middle of this Bay, the Dutch
have built a Pentagone Fort below the Table-land,
which covers it to the South, and behind the Sa-
ne-Mountain, that faces it to the West, a League
from Land or thereabouts. In entering the Bay,
you leave a pretty low Island on the Left-hand,
called Lifkana, in the middle whereof the Hol-
landers have put up their Flag. Thither they
sent their of the Country, and the Indians also
whom they would punish with Unishment, and
force them to make Lime there of the Shells that
Emerg of be are call up by the Sea.

The Weather being fair for putting into the
Bn Bay, we were in hopes of being at Ancho by an
orning in Am. of the Clock in the Morning, but the Wind hing.
ing us all of a sudden at the entry, we were becalmed, and met with a current that carried us a great pace upon a rock towards the river, where we saw the water break with much violence. Immediately two boats were launched to row us off, and get us clear of that rock; but notwithstanding the foresight of the officers, and diligence of the crew in obeying their orders, we were in great danger of running foul of it, the current of tide carrying us violently upon the same, and we were not half a league from that break, when suddenly we had a land-breeze which obliged us to tow in our boats again, and soon put us out of danger; we lost, however, two top-sails there, which were split by the violence of the wind. Being obliged all day long to beat too and again in the mouth of the bay, with a great deal of trouble, we could not get to the place of anchoring before the beginning of night. Nay, we were obliged next morning to weigh again, that we might lie under the mountains secure from the west winds, which are extremely violent, and reign there in the winter time, as then it was. We came to an anchor, then, next day about an hundred and fifty yards from the fort. There our ship was in the road of the cape four great ships, came to an anchorage there about a month before from Holland, Anchor a-midst four Hollanders vessels, as a mark of the supreme power and command that the Dutch East-India Company take to themselves in the Indies. She was commanded by the Herre Van Roonen, who was sent by the East-India Company with the title of Commissary General.
p. 46-47

A Voyage to Siam. Book II.

General, to visit all the Places which they hold in that Country. He had full Power to order all things, to change the Officers of Factories, nay, and the Governors of Places also, if he thought fit. The second was commanded by the Herre St. Martin, a French Man by Country, and Major General of Barbares, in that Quality commanding all the Forces the States have in the Indies. One Boreman an old Sea Captain, and Counsellor to the Herre Von Rheeden, during the Time of his Commission, commanded the third, the fourth attended the Herre St. Martin, who was to make all haste to Batavia.

All these Gentlemen and M. Vanhefelen Governor, or to use the Dutch Word, Commander of the Cape, are Men of Worth, and it was a happy Encounter for us, that we had such Men to treat with, during the stay that we made there.

The Dutch used to know from whence our Ships.

The Ambassadors sent to compleat the Governor of the Cape,

The Jesuits made answer, that there were six of us going to Calm, and that there were other Churchmen on board also bound for Siam.

Then they came to speak of the Salute, and it was agreed upon that the Fort should render Gun for Gun where our Ship saluted it. This Article was ill explained, or ill understood by those Gentlemen, for about ten of the Clock my Lord Ambassador having ordered seven Guns to be fired, the Admiral answered only with five Guns, and the Fort fired none at all. Immediately the Ambassador sent again, and it was determined that the Admirals Salute should pass for nothing, and so the Fort fired seven Guns, the Admiral seven Guns, and the other Ships fire, to salute the Kings Ship, which returned them their Salutation, for which the Fort and Ships gave their Thanks. After that we made ready our Boats, and thought of nothing now but of going aboard to refresh our Selves.

So soon as we arrived in the Bay, we found it to be so proper a Place for making Observations, that we instantly resolved to use all means that we might observe: For that end there was a necessity of taking a commodious House, carrying thither our Instruments, and having leisure to play it both Day and Night during the short time we had to stay there. There was difficulty in this; Jesuits, Mathematicians, and several Instruments carried aboard might offend the Nicety of a Dutch Commander, in a pretty new Colony, and make him respect something else than what we pretended. Nay, we were advised to disfigure our selves, and not to appear to be Jesuits; but we did not think fit, and we found by what followed, that our Habit did us no Injury at all.
A Voyage to Siam.

Book II.

After we had a little considered on't, it was resolved, that Father Fontana and I, should go visit the Commissary General and the Governor of the Place, before the roll went abroad, and that if in Désirée we found occasion to open our Design, we should lay hold on it. We went straight to the Fort then without any other Recommendation: The Sentinel let us at the first Gate, according to the Custom of Garlin-places, until an Officer of the Guard being come, and having informed himself that we were come to pay a Visit to the Commissary General and Governor, he commanded us to be let in, and gave us a Soldier to conduct us to their Apartment.

This House consists of a large File of Building, two Storeys high, and very solidly built. It is covered with a very fair Tarras, paved with broad free Stone, with Balcornies and Iron Rails all round; thither they commonly go to take the fresh Air. This Country has so temperate an Air, that it is never very cold there, but when a South Wind blows; and though it was the depth of Winter then in relation to that Climate; yet it was so hot in the day time, that they were glad to go take the fresh Air in the Evening.

We went first into a great Hall where they preach every Sunday and the Church be finished. There is a great Sea of Water, and in the midst of it a great Fountain, which is covered with a great Dome, and adorned with Statues and other Figures. On both sides of this Hall there are pretty handsome Apartments; they had us in to that which was on the Left-hand, where we were received by Monsieur Vandenfelt, and which presently after the Ete van Reelen came to see us. He is a Man of Quality about fifty years of age, Handsome, Civil, Wise, and Learned, and who thinks

Book II. A Voyage to Siam.

thinks and speaks well on all Subjects; we were extremely surprized to meet with so much Politeness at the Cape of Good-Hope, and much more at the Civilities and many Testimonials of Friendship which we received at that first Interview. Father Fontana, whose Interpreter I was at that time in Portugal, finding so lucky Dispositions for our Design, told the Commissary General that there were not few Jesuits of us who were bound for the Indies and China, that not being at all accustom'd to the Fatigues of Sea, we found need of taking a little Air on Land, that we might be recruited after so long a Voyage; that we durst not do so, before we knew their Minds, whether they would be contented with it or not. The Commissary General did not suffer me to interpret all that Father Fontana had said to him, but presently interrupting me: You do us the greatest Pleasure imaginable, Fathers, said he, in Portugal, to come and refresh your selves at Land, we will contribute all that lies in our Power to your Refreshment and Recovery.

This Answer was so favourable that we went a little farther; we told him, that being affrayed, we should be glad to employ our selves for the publick Good, and then to communicate to him our Observations; thereby to acknowledge in some manner the Civilities that he had shewn us: that we had brought with us from France several Mathematical Instruments, amongst which there were some very proper for finding out the true Longitude of Countries through which one pass'd, without any need of the Eclipses of the Sun and Moon; we explained to him the new way of observing by the Shadows of Jupiter, of which the
The Learned Monsieur Caffini hath made so good Tables. I added that thereby we would render a very considerable Service to their Fleets, by giving them the certain Longitude of the Cape of Good-Hope, which they only guessed at by their reckonings, a very doubtful way that many times deceive them, and that very considerably too. He told us that we would thereby oblige him, and that being we had a mind to labour in that Discovery, he offered us a Place every way proper for observing. At the same time he ordered a Summer-house that is in the Companies Garden to be made ready for us to lodge in, so long as the Ambassador should continue in the Road.

We made answer that the Civility which he shew'd us should not rest there, and that we hop'd my Lord Ambassador would have the Goodness to thank him, and take it as a Kindness done partly to himself. Then we shew'd him our Patent for being the Kings Mathematicians. You entertaine my Joy, Father replied the Companions, in letting me see that I comply with the Will and Orders of so great a King, for whom I shall entertain a profound Respect so long as I live. However I am not vexed that you did not speak to me of that before I obliged you to accept of a Lodging, which I offer you freely, and with all my Heart. They brought us Yar, as it is the Custom amongst the People of the East-Indies, and after a pretty long Conference about indifferent Matters, we took leave of the Gentlemen, and withdrew. The Commander followed us to conduct us to the Apartment that was offered us in the Companies great Garden.

We
A Voyage to Siam. Book II.

the Dutch shall call our Observatory; we went on Board to give the Ambassador and our Fathers an Account of all that had past.

Next day the Commissary and Commander The Ambassador on Board all sorts of Refreshments. The Lord and Curate Officer who was ordered to make that Present to the Ambassador in their Behalf, told us that they charge many Gentlemen had also sent us a Boat to carry us and Civilians, our Instruments aboard. Having in the Night prepared the which we thought we might stand in need of, we put them into the Boat, and so went to the Observatory the second of June, in the Year one thousand six hundred and eighty five.

A Pendulum Clock with Seconds, made by the Clocks at Paris, being set at to Hour, make our Observations near the true Hour as we could guess, not having as yet corrected the Clock, we began the following Observations.

The first Sextiles appeared in the Evening at eleven and three Minutes of the Clock not as yet corrected, distant from Jupiter, somewhat less than the Diameter of the same Jupiter.

By the Telescope we saw two parallel Bands or Strakes upon the Body of Jupiter, the one larger towards the Southern Border, and the other narrower towards the Northern. The first Sextiles began to touch the Border of Jupiter at 11 a Clock 37 M. 30 S. at eleven a Clock 58 M. 35 S. the Sextiles was no more to be seen.

Their Observations were made with an Excellent Telescope twelve foot long, of the late Monsieur de Bézi; the Hours are fill of the Pendulum not rectified.

D 3

We
A Voyage to Siam. Book II.

We confusely observed figures in the Clock five Minutes after Midnight, at what time he was hid behind the Lion Mountain, which limited our Sight towards the West, so that we could not at that day see the Emerion of the first Star.

The third of June. 1685.

For rectifying the Hour of the Clock.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Heights before Noon</th>
<th>Hours of the Clock</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Deg. Mm. Sec.</td>
<td>Hour. Mm. Sec.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>9 37 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>9 34 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>10 4 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>10 8 48</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Heights after Noon</th>
<th>Hours of the Clock</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Deg. Mm. Sec.</td>
<td>Hour. Mm. Sec.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 79 55</td>
<td>0 The Observation fail’d.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 11 0</td>
<td>1 59 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 56 10</td>
<td>2 47 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0 16 c</td>
<td>3 10 38</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The above Elevation were taken with a Quadrant of ninety Degrees, of eighteen Inches the Radius, made by Mr. Bonnycastle at Paris.

It is to be observed that these Heights of the Sun were not of the same Border; in the Morning we
Book II. A Voyage to Siam.

we took the Height of the Superior Border, and in the Evening of the Inferior only, which is to be taken notice of.

For the Variation of the Needle.

By Mr. Butterfield’s equinoctial Dial, which carries a great compass under the Meridian; the Variation of the Needle was found to be eleven Degrees and a half North-west.

Having no particular Observations to make in the Evening, we considered several fixed Stars with the Telescope twelve foot long.

The foot of the Crosser marked in Bssr is a several double Star, that is to say, consisting of two bright Stars distant one from another about their own Diameter only, much like to the most Northern of the Taurus; not to speak of a third much less, which is also to be seen, but farther from these two.

Under the Crosser there are several Places of the Milky Way, which seem to be filled, if you look through the Telescope, with an infinite number of Stars.

The two Clouds which are near the South Pole appear not to be a crowd of Stars, like the Praetens Cencris, nor yet a dusky Light, as the cloudy part of Andromeda; nothing hardly is to be seen there with great Glasses, though without a Glass one may see them very white, especially the great Cloud.

No Constellation in the Heavens looks so lovely as those of the Centaur and Sheep. There are no fair Stars near the Pole, but a great many little ones. See and other Books that speak of them.
thens omit a great many, and most of them they set down appear not in the Heavens in the same Situation.

The Fourth of June, 1687.

For rectifying the Hours of the Clock.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Heights before Noon</th>
<th>Hours of the Clock</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>M.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Heights after Noon</th>
<th>Hours of the Clock</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>M.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Horizontal Thread of the Telescope was not exactly parallel to the Horizon; we always endeavoured to supply that in the Observations of the Clock, by making the Border of the Sun pass by the same Place of the Thread, or as near as could be to it.

You are always to mind that they are the Heights of different Borders of the Sun, in the Month:

Book II. A Voyage to Siam.

Morning of the Superior Border, and in the Evening of the Inferior.

Monday after Dinner we went to the Fort, to see the Gentlemen, and communicate to them the Observations which we had already made, and acquaint them with that we were to make that Evening, according to which alone one might regulate the true Longitude of the Cape. Upon our return all these Gentlemen would needs go along with us, to be Spectators of that Observation. We were together upon the Terras taken up in showing them our Instruments, which seemed very pretty and curious to them; when we perceived my Lord Ambassador, who having been insomniac the Day before to walk in the Garden, found it so pleasant, that he returned again next day to divert himself there, with most part of the Officers of both Ships, and the Gentlemen of his Retinue. The Ambassador and Commis-
A Voyage to Siam.

Book II.

not make use of that; because the Operation was not safe.

After the emersion of the first Sæxtile, having compared
together the heights of the Sun, taken in Morning and
Evening the third and fourth of June, and con sidered
the difference of time amongst the same height of
the superior and inferior Limb of the Sun, because in the Morning we had observed
the superior Border, and in the Evening the inferior, we found that the Pendulum went faster
than the Sun both days, by eight and twenty
Minutes.

At the instant of the Emersion of the first Sæxtile it was by the Pendulum ten Hours, five Min.
forty Sec. from whence having subtracted twenty
eight Minutes.

Remove the true time of the Emersion, nine
Hours, thirty seven Min. forty Seconds.

The Ephemerides of Moniteur Continent Calculated
in Minutes gave the time of that Emersion in the
Meridian of Paris to be at eight Hours, twenty
six Minutes.

But his Tables of Eclipses Calculated to
Seconds, gave the same instant at eight a Clock,
twenty five Min. forty Seconds.

Having deducted them from the hours observed
at the Cape of Good Hope, nine Hours, thirty
seven Min. forty Seconds.

There remains the difference of Meridians be
tween the Cape of Good Hope and Paris of an Hour
twelve Minutes, which make eighteen degrees
difference of Longitude; and suppose the Lon
gitude of Paris taken from the first Meridian, that
passes by the Isle of Jervis the most Westerly of the
Canaries to be twenty two degrees and a half
according to the same Author, the Longitude of
the Cape of Good Hope taken from the same Meri
dian, will be forty degrees and an half, not much
different from what the modern Charts assign to
it.

Next day being Thursday the fifth of June about
seven a Clock, those Gentlemen came back
to the Observatory, and stayed there till towards
two in the Afternoon, to see us take the height and
distance of the Table Mountain, and to view
our instruments. We shou’d them particularly
the use of the Equinoctial Dial, by means whereof
we found again that day the variation of the
needle to be eleven degrees and a half North west.

So that two advantages may be drawn from
these observations. First the variation of the
Needle which we found with the Astronomical
Ring to be eleven degrees and a half North west,
and then, the true Longitude of the Cape, which
we regulated according to that emersion of the
first Sæxtile of Saturn, which being to appear at
eight of the Clock twenty six Minutes upon the
horizon of Paris, and having been observed at the
Cape at nine a Clock, thirty seven Minutes,
fourty Seconds gives an hour twelve Minutes, forty
Seconds difference between the two Meridians of
the two places, which being converted into de
grees, make eighteen, and by conference the
Charts are defective, and make the Cape more
Easterly by near three degrees than in reality it is. The Author of Chief would needs be a wit
ness of our Observations, and for some time led
the Life of an Observer with us.

Towards the Evening we had notice first to a
Shore,
A Voyage to Siam. Book II.

Shore, that we must come aboard next morning betimes; we went immediately all on board to the Port to take leave of the Dutch Gentlemen, and give them our Thanks: For, indeed, we could not be more civilly, nor more kindly used than we were. Besides when we went on Board we found Presents of Tea and Canary Wine, which the Governor sent us, taking it kindly that we had left with him a Microscope and a small burning Glass.

These Gentlemen seemed all much affected at our Departure. We pray God, said they, embracing us tenderly. That the designs for which you are going to China may succeed, and that you may bring a great number of Invidious to the knowledge of the true God. At length we parted, very much touch’d also with their good desires and civilities. As we pass by the Governors apartment. He shew’d us in a Tub full of Water, two little Fifths, no longer than one Finger. The Portuguese call one of them the Gold-Fifth, and the other the Silver-Fifth; because, in reality, the tail of the Male seems to be of Gold, and the Females of Silver. He told us that these Fifths came from China, and that the persons of Quality of these Countries as well as the Egyptians had an extraordinary affection for them, and kept them in their Houses out of Curiosity. We saw some of them afterward in the Palace of the General of Banavas, and at Siam in the House of the Lord English, chief Minister of that Kingdom, and of some Chinese Mandarins. The Ambassador had pray’d the Hert-von Peelen Commissary General to write to the General of Banavas, that he would give us a Pilot to conduct us to Siam, and he

he having undertaken the Commission, sent the Ambassador, next day, a very obliging Letter for him, wherein towards the end he added that General, wherein towards the end he added himself, without any Solicitation from us, an Article in our Favour. We spent the Night in packing up our Instruments again, and next Morning before day we put them into a Challop, which the Commander ordered to be in readiness for us, and so we went on board again.

This is all that pass’d at the Cape of Good Hope in relation to our observations. Though we pleas’d them day and night, yet they were not our only Employment. No sooner had we got possession of our little Observatory, but the Catholics of that Colony, who are pretty numerous, had notice of it, and were thereat exceedingly rejoiced. In the Mornings and Evenings they came privately to us. There were some of all Countries, and of all Conditions, Free, Slaves, French, German, Portuguese, Spaniards, Englishmen, and Indians. They The Sentiments of the Catholics on the Cape upon our arrival.

What care was taken of the Catholics at the Cape.

p. 60-61
A Voyage to Siam. Book II.

at night, and honour the holy Virgin, who was able to procure them more Grace to live Christianly, and to keep them from Heresies. They who spoke French, Latin, Spanishe, or Portuguese were confest. We visited the Sick in their Houses and in the Hospital. This was all that could be done for their Conversion in 13 short a time, they not having the Liberty to come on board of us and bear Maffs, nor we to say it to them a Shoar. Nevertheless it must have been suspected at the Cape that we carried them the Sacrament. For two of our Fathers returning one day from on Board with a Microscope in one of their Hands covered with Spanish Leather gilt, two or three of the Inhabitants walking upon the Shoar, imagined it to be the holy Sacrament which they were carrying to Catholicks in a Box. They drew near to the Father to know the truth of the matter; the Father told them what it was, and convinced them, made them look into the Microscope. Then one of them told him, Sir, I thought it had been to, because I know that you are the greatest Enemies of our Religion. We could not but flamin at that saying, but without making answer we kept on in our way fhore to the Port.

To conclude, all that concerns the Cape of Good Hope, it only remains that I relate what we learned of the State of the Country. For some of our Fathers were charged to inform themselves of that, whilst the rest were taken up about their Observations. In that Prospect we made it our Business to get out of M. Vandersallt in the several Conversations we had with him all that could contribute to our Information; and we made

Book II. A Voyage to Siam.

made acquaintance with a young Physician of Breslov in Silesia, called Mr. Claudius, whom the Dutch for his great Capacity entertain at the Cape. Seeing he had already travelled into China and Japan, where it was his Custom to observe every thing, and that he designs and paints Animals and plants perfectly well, the Hollandoys have foyn him there to assist them in making their new discoveries of Countries, and labour about the natural History of Africa. He has composed two great Volumes in Folio of several Plants, which are drawn to the life, and he has made a Collection of all the kinds which he has past to the Leaves of another Volume. Without doubt the Her. van Reesten who had always these Books by him at home, and who showed them to us, has a design to give the publick shortly an Iconus Africorum after his Hortus Malabaricus. Had these Books been to be void, we would have spared no Cost to have bought them and sent them to the King's Library. Since this learned Physician hath already made some Progrusses before Leagues up into the Country towards the North and East, there to make new discoveries, it is from him that we got all the knowledge we have of that Country, of which he gave us a little Map made with his own hand, with some Figures of the Inhabitants of the Country, and of the rarest Animals, which here are infested. The most remarkable things we learnt are what follow.

The Dutch finding that an establishment in that place would be convenient for their Ships lying on the which they yearly fend to the Indies, treated with Cape, the Chief Heirs of that Nation, who contested for
A Voyage to Siam.

Book II.

For a certain quantity of Tobacco and Brandy, to surrender that Country to them, and to withdraw farther up into the Continent. This agreement was made about the year 1659, and since that time they have taken a great deal of pains to make a firm settlement on the Cape. They have at present there a great Town and a Fort with five Bastions which commands all the Road. The air is very good, the Soil excellent, and Corn grows there as well as in Europe; they have planted Vines which yield a most delicate Wine.

Wild Game they have everywhere in abundance. Our Officers returned from Hunting and Fowling with wild Goats, Antelopes, Pheasants and abundance of Partridges as big as the Woodcocks of France, and there are four sorts of them. The Ozen and Sheep are got farther up amongst the wild Natives of the Country; but that is a Traffic which the Company refers to themselves, who buy them up for a little Tobacco, and sell them again to the Inhabitants of the Cape, and to strangers that put in there for fresh Provisions. We live Sheep there that weigh beyond twelve pounds, and were very good meat.

They have there also Civets, many Wildcats, Lynxes, and Tygers which have very pretty skins and especially huge great Apes that comes sometimes in Troops down from the Table-land upon the Gardens of private Persons, and carry away their Melons and other fruit. Nine or ten Leagues from the Cape R Bafore there is a Chain of Hills full of Lynxes, Escalions, and Rhinoceroses of a prodigious height. Men of credit who have travelled there allowed me that they had found the foot-trace of
Book II.  A Voyage to Siam.

of an Elephant two feet and a half in diameter, and that they had seen several Rhinocerotes as A prodigious high and big as an ordinary Elephant. All that Elephant, I can say so to that, is that I have seen the two horns which that Beast carries on its Noe, battled together as they are naturally, of a bigness and weight that inclined me to believe that what they told me of it was true. The Lieutenant of the A property of Castle who went on that Progres, told me that the Rhinocerous being in rage runs his greatest Test. Hot into the Ground and continues to run a kind of Porrus with it, till he come up with him that has smitten him. The skin of that Beast is so hard, that it is Mulgrit-proof, whilst one take the time to hit it, when it flies in Flanks, the only place of its body where feet-arms or ballards, that the Travellers carry, can wound it. There are Horses and Affes there of extraordinary beauty. The first have a very little head, and pretty long Ears. They are covered all over with black and white streaks that reach from their back to their belly about four or five fingers broad and are very pretty to look on. I saw the skin of one that had been killed, which my Lord Ambassadour bought to carry with him into Paris as a very curious thing. As for the Affes they are of all colours, they have a long beautiful tail on the back that reaches from head to tail, and the rest of the body like the horse, full of pretty broad streaks, blew, yellow, green, black and white, all very lively.

Stags are so plentiful there that they are seen feeding in Flocks like Shepards. I heard the Commanders Secretary say, and the Commander himself too, that they had seen ten thousand of them together in a Plain which they found in a Wood.
There are not so many Lynes nor Tygers as some
but yet there is a great many of them, and I
can easily believe it because of the vast number
of those beasts slain wherein they Trade at the
Cape. They keep not so close to the Woods; but
they come sometimes to places inhabiting
where they do upon any thing they meet, and
even upon Men themselves. There happened an
incident of this while we were there, and the
Consul General told us of it. Two Men walk
ning at a distance from their habitations perceived
a Tyger, one fixed at it and nailed it, upon which
it made a spring at him and brought him to the
ground; the other finding it in what extreme danger
his Comrade was, fired at the Tyger and wound
ed his Friend in the thigh: The Tyger in the
mean time having received no hurt, left his prey,
and made after this Man the first spring to
against came in at the fleet of time and killed the
Tyger. They say that this Beast hath such an
inclined and amongst an hundred Men it will
sluggle out him that fired at it, and leave all the
rest. A month before the like accident almost
happened of a Lyon who tore to pieces a Man
and his Servant, pretty near the habitations, and
was afterwards killed by Indians.
At the Cape we took a great many excellent
Fishes. Amongst others Mullen, and of these Fish
which in France they call Arnaud, are very good and
are far different from the Dolphin; and is much
bigger and better drives the same, because of
its yellowish colour and golden spots, that make
it put for one of the lowest Fish that feeds in the Sea. We took also great number of Surls, and
tame Crayfish. The Crayfish are very
Fats.
Book II. A Voyage to Siam.

Fish and very few, which hath the virus, when they fish for it, cast a nummis in the hand and arm. We saw many Sea-Wolves there, which seem to be well enough named. There are Pow-

ers there also. These are water-foot, without wings, and are constantly almost in the water, be-
ing truly amphibious.

In the year 1681, the Texer Vanderlisle settled a new Colony, consisting of four and two Families, nine or ten Leagues farther up in the Country, and called it by the name of Hollandia.

Some affirm that there are Gold Mines on the Goldenhills Cape. They showed in Stones found there which on the Cape were scored to confirm that opinion; for they are ponderous, and with a Microscope one may dis-
cover on all sides small particles that look like gold.

But the most curious thing we found on the Cape was an exact Map of the places about newly discovered by a Hollander, with a Latin rela-
tion of the Nations that inhabit them. Both were given us by a Man of Credit who hath set down nothing but what himself was an eye-witness of, the translation of it follows.

"The South point of Africa is no less remote than the manner of its Inhabitants is. We who are ignorant of the Creation of the World, the solution of the Mysteries of the Holy Trinity, and the Mystery of Redemption of Mankind, may be said to be ignorant of the God who made us."

God, but the knowledge they have of him is very confused. In honour of him they kill Cows and Sheep, and Offer Him the Edith and Milk, in Sacrifice, as a token of their gratitude towards
towards that Delty, who grants them all
they believe, sometimes Rain and sometimes
fair weather according as they liad in need of it, they expect no other life after this. Nor
withstanding that they have still some good
qualities which should hinder us from defiling
them: for they have more Charity and Felicity
than any other nation there is to be found amongst
by amongst Christians. Adultery and Their
are with them capital Crimes always punished
by Death. Tho every Man has the liberty to
take as many Wives as he is able to maintain,
yet none of them, not of the richer sort is to
be found with more than three.

These People are divided into several Na-
ions, who have all the same way of living.
Their ordinary Food is Milk and the flesh of
the Cattle which they keep in great quantity.
Every one of these Nations have their Head or
Captain whom they obey, that Office is Heredi-
tary, and goes from Father to Son. The Right
Succession belongs to the Eldest, and that they
may retain the Authority and Respect, they are
the only Heirs of their Fathers, the younger
having no other inheritance, but the obligation
of serving their Elders. Their Cloaths are no
more but plain Sheep-skins with the wool, pre-
pared with Cow-dung and a certain Grecce that
renders them insupportable both to the eye and
smell. The first Nation in the Language of
their Country, is called Sopass. The Europe-
ans call those People Thosmar; perhaps because they
have always that word in their mouth when
they meet Strangers. Seeing they are more
strong, bold, and more expert than others in
handing

Book II.

A Voyage to Siam.

- handling their Arms, which are the Javelin and
- Arrows, they go and serve other Nations as Sol-
diers, and in these is no other Nation who besides
their own Natives have not also Savages in their
- Their Food.
- In their own Country they live in
- deep Caves, and sometimes in Houses as others
- They are very dexterous in killing Elephants,
- Rhinoceros, Elks, Seals, Ape-lapses, wild
- Goats, and several other Beasts, of which there
- at certain times the Honey which the bees
- make in hollow Trees and Rocks.

I will make a little digression from this rela-
tion, that I may give an account of what we our-
- Our ships have seen of those people, or what we learned
- from them in very true hands. The inhabi-
tors of Siam are very civil and the People
- being persuaded that there is no other life af-
ter this, labour as little and take as much care as
they can in this World. To hear them talk even Their Opin-
ion when they are sweeping the Dust, or to their
- Tobacco, Brandy, they go upon them as flames own way of
- and as living, and who labour the Land of their Country, and as living,
- People of no Courage who flout themselves upon
- themselves from within Houses and Forms to secure them from their
- Enemies, whilst they have no security
- in the open Fields without loopholes to low as
- or Labour Land. By that way of living they
- pretend to demonstrate that they are Masters of
- the Earth, and the happiest People of the World,
- because they alone live in Liberty and repose,
- wherein they place their Felicity. Whilst we
- in the Companies, a leading Man
- the chief of the Dutch there; came to the Os-
A Voyage to Siam.

Book II.

The Arrival of our Men and Women.

The air was very rarefied, and the sun had just set. The thermometer stood at 82 degrees, and the wind blew from the south-west. The inhabitants of this country are very fond of the use of tobacco, and they smoke it in long pipes, which they carry on their shoulders, and which are often more than a foot long. They also use a great deal of opium, which they eat in small cakes, or in the form of a powder. The women wear a sort of cloak, which they call a "sail," and which is made of cotton. This cloak is usually of a dark blue color, and is embroidered with gold thread. The men wear a kind of tunic, which reaches down to the knees, and is made of hemp. This tunic is usually of a dark red color, and is embroidered with gold thread. They also wear a kind of head-dress, which is made of straw, and is decorated with feathers. The women wear a kind of bonnet, which is made of cotton, and is embroidered with gold thread. The men wear a kind of hat, which is made of straw, and is decorated with feathers. They also wear a kind of cloak, which is made of wool, and is embroidered with gold thread. The women wear a kind of dress, which is made of silk, and is embroidered with gold thread. The men wear a kind of coat, which is made of wool, and is embroidered with gold thread. They also wear a kind of hat, which is made of straw, and is decorated with feathers. They also wear a kind of cloak, which is made of wool, and is embroidered with gold thread. The women wear a kind of bonnet, which is made of cotton, and is embroidered with gold thread. The men wear a kind of hat, which is made of straw, and is decorated with feathers. They also wear a kind of cloak, which is made of wool, and is embroidered with gold thread. The women wear a kind of dress, which is made of silk, and is embroidered with gold thread. The men wear a kind of coat, which is made of wool, and is embroidered with gold thread.
Book II. "A Voyage to Slaim.

thinner Rings which they wear about their Arms.

However Barbarity has not so totally effaced their Mores, but that there remains still some footprints of Virtue; they are truly, and the Dutch allow them free access into their houses without any fear of being Robbed by them. Nevertheless it is said, that they are not so reserved as to Strangers, or to the Dutch who are new comers, who know them not so well as to get them purified for it. They are beneficent and helpful, and keep nothing wholly for themselves. When they have anything given them, it is can be divided, they give a share of it to the first of their acquaintance they meet, and they'll hunt about for them for that purpose, and commonly keep the least share of what they have to themselves.

When any one amongst them is Convicted of the more Capital Crime, as of Theft or Adultery, the box they put Captain and chief Men Assemble, and having him Complexed, they themselves are the Executioners of their own Sentence; they knock him on the head with Cudgels, every one coming in order and according to his quality to give him a blow, after the Captain in honour hath given the knock; or otherwise they run him through with their javelin. They say, they are Astrologers and Herbalists, and Men of Craft, and the greatest Part of the Men are conversant in the disposition of the Heavens, and that they would distinguish Sundays, even in the night-time by the touch and feel; they are capriciously jealous of their Liberty, and the Dutch Commander told us that he had a mind to take one of them by making him his slave.
A Voyage to St. J.

Aft President: in his tender age: However when he was grown up, there was a necessity of giving him leave to be gone, which he infanti-

ly desired; saying, that he could not submit to the toil of a regular life, that the Dutch and fish

other Nations were in to the earth; and that

the Tharun were the Masters of it, that they were

not forced to flock with the hat continually un-

der their arm, and to observe a hundred unsafe

customs; that they are when they were hungry,

and followed no other Rules but what Nature

taught them, after all they are merry, sprightly,
bend in their words, and seem to have wit.

They have some very odd and whimsical

customs. When a woman has lost her first

husband, she ought afterwards to cut off an en-

nary joint of her fingers, beginning at the little

finger, as the Marrus new Husband. The Men

in their youth make themselves half Brandy,

pretending that this contributes much to the

preservation and increase of bodily agility. They

are all either Hunters or Shepherds, their dwell

in Castles, and live on their Pigs, their fish on

their Flots and their Milk. They lodge, as Huns

made of the branches of Trees, covered with

them and made like houses, the door of them is

so low, that there is no entering but upon all four,

and the roof a little nailed, that one cannot stand

upright in them. Four or five Families lodge in

one of these huts, which is not above five or six

Geometrical paces in circumference: they make

the fire in the middle, and the apartments are

only distinguished by holes made in the ground.

But let us now go on with the Relations

which we have interrupted.
Book II.  A Voyage to Siam.

The second Nation is that of the Namnsans, the Nomeans, the Figure of whom is here represented. The first time we discovered them was in the year 1683. We entered their villages, and by some Caffers that served in the seaports, for London, we sent these Captain Tabasco, a Pipe, Brandy, a Knife and some bits of Cord. The Captain accepted our Presents, and in gratitude sent us two feathers each of which Tail weighed about seven pounds weight, with a great velvety full of Meal, and a certain leaf which they call Komna: it is probable that that famous Plant which the Chinese name Gaffa: For Monsieur Claudeau who hath seen it at Clumps, affirms that he found two Plants of it upon the Cape, and they'd write entire Figure of it which he had drawn to the life, and which Monsieur Tabasco lately gave me a sight of. This Komna is frequently the Indians do Belch and Ate it. Next day one of their Captains came to us: He was a Man who for the taille of his Figure and a certain Stereophy he had in his hands, was respected by his Countrymen, he brought along with him fifty young Women, and as many Women and Girls. The Men carried each of them a Plate in their hand made of certain Reed very well woven, which rendered a pretty plainsound. The Captain having given them the film, they fell a playing all together upon these Instruments, with which the women and girls mingled their voices, and a snuff which they made by dropping of their hands. These two Companies were drawn into two rings one within another. The first, which was the smallest, and made up of the men, encompassed the round or the ring of the women, that was within them, both men and women danced thus in a round, the Men turning to the right hand and the Women to the left, where an Old man standing in the middle, made their way of Their Mufick and Instruments.
A Voyage to Siam.  

Book II.

The Strength, Courage, and Manners.

The Nagaquas are held in great repute amongst those People, and are accounted brave, Warlike, and Potent, though their greatest Rivers extend not two thousand Miles courning down. They are all of Scarcity and Strong, have good natural force, when any grijill is put to them, they weigh their words well before they answer, and all their answers are short and grave. They seldom laugh, and speak very little, the Women seem to be ugly, and are not near so grave as the Men.

The third Nation are the Ubiquas. They are by Profession Robbers, and rob the Africans as well as Strangers. Though they are not able to send five hundred Men into the Field, yet is it not easy to rout them out, because they retire into inaccessible Mountains. The Guriquas make the fourth Nation which is but of small extent. The Hauquipas make the fifth, and are more numerous: they are rich and powerful, both reposed in the art of War: contrary to the first Nation, I mean, the Guriquas who are great Warriors. The fourth Nation are the Souquepas, and the Oliquas are their Allies.

In the great Rivers there is a Monstrous Creature which they call a Sea-cow, and equals the Rhinoceros in bulk, and feeds on Fish, or to say better, the Lord of it is good to eat; and hath a very pleasant taste. I have here given you a view of some Trees, Plants and Flowers, there are infinite numbers of them, and those very curious, not only for their beauty, but for their particular virtues also.
In the Progress they made which lasted five Months, they advanced as far Northward as the Cape which is in the Tropick; that is to say, they discovered two Progress of hundred Leagues of the Country, keeping always into the Country within ten or twelve Leagues of the Western Ocean.

The Commander Paasenfelt was there in Persia, accompanied with fifty eight Men well Armed. His Cape came after him and forty Wagons with twenty eight Horses, three hundred Sheep, and a hundred and fifty Oxen. These last carried the Baggage and drew the Wagons, and the Sheep served for food to the Travellers. He set out with his Company from the Cape of Gold-hooge about the latter end of May, which is the Winter time in that Country, and he chose that Season, that he might not want Water and Forrage in the Dafars which it belongeth him to cross over. They discovered some different Nations the eight and twelfth Degree of Latitude, who live in a pleasant Country abounding in all sorts of Fruits and Animals. Before they got thither, they found many Dafars and Monnains, one of which was so high, that the Commander afforded us they were forty days in mounting up to the top of it. They were all both Man and Beast like to have been killed with thirst; and were many times in danger of being devoured by the wild beasts which they met in Troops. He had much ado to save The danger himself from a Rhinoceros of a huge bignesst that he was in of was within three steps of him ready to tear him loosing his life, in pieces, had he not escaped it by flinging himself to one side, and getting out of sight of the Beast, which fought about for him a long while to have rent him.

But
A Voyage to Siam.  

But when they came to the 27th. Degree of Latitude about ten or twelve Leagues from the Coast of the Ocean, they met with a very numerous Nation, and far more tradable than any they had met with till then. Mr. Pennecot had with him two Trumpets, some Hobois, and several Violins, and so soon as the People heard the sound of these Instruments, they came flocking about them, and sent for their Musick, consisting of near thirty persons, who had almost all different Instruments. He that was in the middle had a very long Corne made of the gut of a Bullock dried and prepared, the rest had Flageolets and Flutes made of Canes of different lengths and thickness. They bore their Instruments much after the same manner as ours are, but with this difference that there is but one hole, which reaches from one end to the other, and is much wider than that of the Flutes and Flageolets commonly used in France. To tune them together, they make use of a Ring that hath a little opening in the middle, which they move up or down in the pipe by means of a little wand, according to the note they would have it tuned to. They hold their Instrument with one hand, and with the other press their Lips against the Instrument so that they may blow full into the Pipe, that Musick is simple, but it is harmonious. He that is Master of the Confort having made all the other Musicians tune their Instruments according to the Key and Note of the Corne, which he has by him, both the Tune that is to be played, and with a great skill beats the time so as he may be seen of all.

The Musick is always accompanied with Dances, which consist in leaping, and certain motions of the feet, without budging out of the place they are in. The Women and Maids, making a great ring about the Dancers, only clap their hands, and sometimes knock with their feet in cadence. None but the players on the Instruments change their place in Dancing, except the Master of the Musick, who stands motionless that he may keep them in tune and time.

The Men are well shaven and robust; they have long hair, which they suffer to hang down and dangle about their shoulders. Their Arms are the Arrow and Javelin, which hath some resemblance with the Lance, their Apparel consists in a long Cloak of a Tygers skin, that reaches down to their heels, some of them are as white as the Europeans, but they furnish themselves with great and the powder of a certain black stone, wherewith they rub over their face and whole body. Seeing their Fields and Woods abound with very rare imple of all sorts, they are all Husbandmen. Many of them are very skillful in Minerals too, which they know how to melt and prepare, but they have no great use for them, perhaps because there are a great many Gold, Silver and Copper Mines in their Country. Their Women are naturally very fair, but to please their Husbands they make themselves black as they do.

Married Women have the upper part of their Hair dyed head flaved, and upon their ears long sharp pointed colored beads. They cover themselves with the skins of Tygers, coloured Rats, which they try about their bodies with things. That Nation highly value a certain kind of put of flowers, which is not to be found but in some Rocks, and is pretty hard and of a very dark colour.
A Voyage to Siam. Book II.

providence hath taught them that Mineral is a wonderful Virtue to bring Women to Bed when they are in Labour, and to make their Cows, Sheep, and Goats easily bring forth. When the Dutch blew up a great Rock with a Mine they found, they were vexed and complained of it as if they had been Robbed of a great Treasure. Upon my return I had a piece of that Mineral given me, with some of the other sorts that have been found in that Country.

There are many other sorts of Animals and Insects to be found there, whereof these are the Figures. The first is a Serpent with horns, called the Crofth which has not been hitherto seen, and whose poison is extremely dangerous. Secondly, a Camelion that danger it itself into all colours, and has a cry like to a Rat. Thirdly, a Lizard, when one strikes him he makes a Moan like a Child that cries, and growing angry bleeds up his scales where with he is rough all over. His Tongue is bewitch and very long, and when any body come near him, he is heard to blow with great violence.

There is another Lizard also to be found there, that is marked with three white crofthes, but the bite of it is not so dangerous as that of the first.

From all that hath been said, it plainly appears, that that Part of Asia is no less Peopled, nor Rich, nor less Fertile in all sorts of Fruits and Animals, than the other Parts already discovered, though it hath been so long neglected. The People who inhabit it are neither Cruel nor Wild, and want neither Decency nor Wit, as appears more and daily, by the Commerce that the Dutch entertain with them. But it is their great
Figure XII verso-Figure XIII
Book II. A Voyage to Siam.

Misfortunes, and not enough to be lamented, that being so numerous a People, they have no Knowledge of the true God, and that no body endeavors to instruct them. Men, indeed, travel over all their Country, and even visit them at their Habitations in the thickest Forests, they are crafty over their forching Defarts, and with much Hardship, Charges and Danger, climb over their steepish Mountains. But this is only done to discover their Mines, to examine the Plentifulness of their Provinces, to learn their Secrets, and the Virtues of their Simples, and to grow rich by their Commerce. The truth is, such an Enterprize, and the Execution of so great and difficult a Design would be very laudable, if Zeal for the Salvation of their Souls came in for a Share, and if in trading with them, one did teach them the way to Heaven, and the Eternal Truths.

Zealous Mathematicks, who would look upon those People as revolutionized by the Blood of Jesus Christ, and for all they are such Savages, as capable of glorifying God to all Eternity, as the Nations who are most Polite, would be very necessary in that remote Part of Africa. In the first place, they would be affinius to the Catholicks of the Cape, who are many years without Matthes and the Sacraments, for want of Priests. They would at the same time instruct the Mathematees, already known, and the more easily to be won over to Jesus Christ, that they have no considerable Vice that may divert them from Christianity. In the course of time they might advance up to the more distant People, of whom, by God's Grace, many might be brought in to the Sheep-Fold of our Saviour.

Thus.
A Voyage to Siam.

Our Departure from the Cape of Good Hope.

There are the Particulars concerning the Cape, which we learned during our Absence there. We had resolved to weigh Anchor the Sixth of June, and for that end all were got on Board in the Morning, but we wanted a Wind to carry us our. Next day, the Seventh, a Breeze blowing from North, we weighed and put under Sail about even of the Clock, and having beat a little, that we might land clear of the Tail of the Law, we doubled the Cape without any difficulty. They affirm this to be one of the most dangerous places in all the Ocean. The truth is, there is a very rough Sea there, and there is always danger with a contrary Wind; but, thanks be to God, we found none, because we had a fair Wind. We had, indeed, always very high Seas, and our Ship routed and made so much Travel, that we could neither Land nor fit without some time to hold by, and far left Reel in the Night-time. However, we naily took heart, because we made a great deal of way with these high West and South-west winds. This continued about eighteen days, in which time we ran near seven hundred Leages. Nay, we had made more, but for the Currents which we met near to the Isle of Madagascar, that were contrary to us; we ran at first to the thirty seven Degree of South Latitude, that we might find the westerly Winds, because in the Season we were in then, they commonly reign there. Nevertheless, about the time, that's to say, on the forespace about seven a Clock in the Morning, at the height of thirty six Degrees South Latitude, whilst we were making pretty good way with a fair Gale, on a sudden the Wind changed right off on head, and back filled our Sails.

Book II. A Voyage to Siam.

Sails with so much violence, that we were like Navigators ought to be always our Pilot, not to the south, but as little as they could, and that is with the South-Wind, make the best of our way, and bear away towards the E. He assured us that the Dutch had observed, that the more they sail to the Southward, the more violent Winds they found, and that sometimes they changed so suddenly from Stern to Stern, that many times they had their Sails blown away, and their Masts bent by the Board. But there was no necessity of giving this last Advice to Moniteur de Vaudreuil, for there never was a more vigilant and industrious Commander, and we were the better for it, especially that day; for if the Ships Company had not been looking out, and the Officers upon the Deck, we had run great Risk of losing, at least our Masts and our Sails.

Hereby it is apparent enough, that the left Ships sail away to the Southward, the better it is, and that if they meet with westerly Winds at the height of the Cape, they should bear their Course, without giving themselves the trouble of running into more Latitude, because of the Winter Season, and the Accidents I have been speaking of, without Caution and Circumvention, are to be avoided. It is not the same in coming back, as we found it in our Passage off the Isle Memse; and I heard also a Dutch Pilot, whom we took in at Batavia to carry us to Siam, tell my Lord Ambassador so. He said,

that
that in the Summer-time, which we took to turn again to the Cape, the best way was a stand away Southward to the thirty fifth or thirty sixth Degree of Latitude, for avoiding the furious Gulfs of wind, which happen commonly near the Isles Maurice and Madagascar; that the Gulfs are like Hurricanes, which endanger all Ships. That was a very distressing Weather, and two violent Stormes that we met with in those very same Parts, as I shall relate in a proper place, convinced us of the Truth of it.

I have already observed that we were put to vain Hopes, that being past the Line, we should find at the height of six or seven Degrees South Latitude, fair Winds to carry us to the Cape of Good-hope. We were no les deceived after we had doubled the Cape, in our Expectation of the Wellerly Winds, that were so confidently promisefed us, if we stood off to the thirty fifth or thirty seventh Degree South. We followed the Instructions; but we found that what the Bar Van Rheden said was true, when he assured us that their Pilots had observed within those four or five years, that the Seasons and Winds were extremely altered, and that there was no trusting to past Experience, but to fall with all circumspection.

Seeing our Pilots feared their Course according to the Instructions that were given them in France, they bore away South to the thirty seventh Degree of Latitude and further, that they might preserve the Wellerly Winds, but there we lost them: for having met with them upon our setting out from the Cape, they failed us at the thirty fourth Degree. Nay, they began to be

both so contrary and so high, that we never met with so rough a Sea as we had then; nothing but Mountains and Abysses, and the Waves broke against the Ship with so much violence, that they made almost as great a Noise as a Cannon Shot, so that had not we been a strong Ship, and had the Weather lasted many days longer, she would have been in great danger of springing Leaks, and of being foundered. The Waves ran so high, and broke so violently, that they went clear over our Stern, and poured in several Tuns of Water at a time between the Decks, which was very uneasy and tiresome to the Ships Company.

After six or seven days, those Winds did in Prayers make dear some little, but then they became contrary, for obtaining This obliged us to have our recourse to the Holy Virgin, to whom the whole Ships Company vowed a Novena, or a nine days Devotion, to pray her that she would obtain a fair Wind for us, because having made little or no way for near a Fortnight, we were afraid of being forced to put into the Coast of Malabar or the Isle of Ceylon, or at least come too late to Batavia, for making the Voyage of Sumatra that year. We had more cause to dread that Delay, for that we began to have a great many lack on board, not only Ships Commissary, because of the bad Weather, but also of bad Victuals, which now began to be spoiled. We had at last forty feet at a time from the Cape to Batavia, most of them on Scowings, a Ditterer which noted their Lags, their Masts, and made their Teeth drop out. We had then a fair Occasion to assist those poor Wretches in the Work of their Salvation. We did all we could to adm
A Voyage to Siam.  

Book II.

According to prepare them for their first Communica-
tions, which sometimes after they performed with
much Piety, and since that time both of them
have lived very exemplarily in the Sea.

We began then our Navey in the seventh of
February, and next day our Prayers were heard. There
was a favourable Wind, that we made fifty
Leagues in less than four and twenty Hours; aft
er that we saw Weeds and Foul in greater num-
ber than usually, for we had not fallen of
their Company all the way from the Cape to Bat-
tania. It was thought they came from the Ille
of St. Paul of Amsterdam, which is towards the thirty
fifth Degree of South Latitude, and the eight
y-ninth of Longitude.

Having run near a thousand Leagues East-
ward, we fleeced away our Course Northward,
that we might make the Ille of Java, which lies
within six Degrees of the Line Southward. Nay,
for some time we had a fresh fair Gale, but fas
the Fifteenth it began to thicken so much, that
we hardly made any Way at all. The Seven-
teenth of the same Month, in the Night-time, we
reached the Tropic of Capricorn, and from that
day forward we sailed as near as we could upon a
Wind, until we came in sight of the Ille of Java.
For we were afraid of falling too much to the A
Cant on the Northward, and by consequence to the Leeward
of the Streight of the Sound, which would have
mightyly perplexed us, because the Trade-winds
and Currents that are in those Parts, not suffert
ing us to enter it, we would have been obliged to
put into the Ille of Celebe or Simeara. Therefore we
sailed in such Winds that might suffer us to bear a
way more to the East, to the end we might
A Voyage to Siam. Book II.

come up with the Land of Jep. However, receiv-
ing that the contrary Winds still continued on Wednesday the five and twentieth of Jep, we
held Council to determine, whether or not we
should bear away still North-East, that we might
pass between the Ills of Goa and the Traid, or if
we should go and make New Holland. Two of
our Pilots were of this last Opinion, trusting to
particular Instructions that set off the Course 9,
and they alleged that the Winds changed not, and
that if we were and made these Lands, they
would be fair for us for entering into the Strait of
the Sound. The other three were against it,
because of the Dangers that are to be met with
along that Coast, and the many Shipwrecks that
happen there; besides, they made it appear that
it was very difficult to pass between the Traid and
the Land, and that so it was better to make up to
the Ile of Jep. They said that in a short time
the Winds would change, or that at worst we
might put in to Sumatra, that this Course, though
illorne enough, was nevertheless safe, and that
it was better to resolve upon it, than to run the
risk of being cast away. This last advice was
followed, and it proved to be the best, as may
be seen in the Sequel. The truth is, the Winds
became no fairer afterwards than they had been
before; but seeing the Ile of Jep was not so
far from us as our Pilots, relying upon their Carts,
imagined, in a short time we found our selves a
good deal higher than the Strait of the Sound,
and we entered it as you shall hear. We would
not touch to the Experience and good advice of
Magellan de St. Martin, who assured us that the
Ile of Jep was ill placed in the common Maps,
and that it was about an hundred Leagues nearer
the Cape, and much more to the Leeward than
was believed.

We held on that course then, steering North-
East, in hopes of a faire Wind; but seeing the
Winds were contrary, and that if we went on we
may be cast away, we resolved to leave another
Navigo, which we began with fresh at the Laren,
Sailing towards the Anchor, where we were to
Beaum, and Zeal and Devotion. About one half of the Ships
Company were dangerously sick, and the rest
were to fetch and fletch, that they could not
work the Ship. The Seamen who belonged to The Sea-men
St. Mells, resolved to give some Token of their Devout
Devotion towards St. Simon, their Patron. They gave six
Devout two or three of their Number to one of our
Fathers, to pray him that he would assist them
in their good Deeds, and persuade them what they
had already done among them selves to make this Vow, many of their Town-
men, who were sick of the Scurvy, put that
Thought into their Minds, and enjoin'd on to the
Performance of it. When they had propo-
sed their Design, they were told that they must begin
by Confession and Communicating, that so they
might be in a Condition to have their Prayers
heard. They prepared themselves accordingly
during the rest of the Week, and on Sunday all
of them confessed and Communicated. When
they had done so, the Father to whom they had
applied...
A Voyage to Siam. Book II.

applied themselves, went up upon the Fore-caste, and having made them to kneel, published about the Promise which they made to God, if by the Intercession of St. Semeon, they obtained a fair Wind, and a happy Return into their own Country.

Providence, without doubt, is in all places wonderful, but I dare be bold to say, and I have often found it by Experience, that it shows itself in a particular manner at sea. We had never begged fair Weather with greater Confidence, and we never thought we stood more in need of it, during all our Voyage. Nevertheless God would not hear our Prayers, and we were obliged to find our selves already at the end of our Journey, without any the least sign of the change of Weather.

But we were soon happily undeceived, and we found that after all our Vows and Prayers, we must resign our selves to the Providence of God. For had our Prayers been heard, and had God granted us the Wind which we so earnestly begged; on the Twelfth of August, in the Night-time, we had infallibly run foul of a little low Island, and been in great danger of being cast away. We did not make that Isle before next Morning at break of Day, when we had already pass’d almost one half of it, being no more but about two Leagues off on’t: So that if that Night we had had a fair Wind to carry us straight North East, as our Pilots thought best for us, we could not have avoided being lost; because that Isle lies almost in the tenth Degree of Latitude, for some time we took it to be the Isle of Cosca, which we thought

Book II. A Voyage to Siam.

thought we had already put, and the rather, because it is marked in the Sea-charts to lie in the twelfth Degree of South Latitude.

We could not imagine that it should be the Isle of Many, the most Southern, and most Eastern of the two Isles, which lyeth near the Coast of Java, either becauseth Many came to the Isle of Java.

The Perplexity we were in before we had not all that Day, nor next, for the other little Isle which is very near to it. And so our sick Men, who were in a very great number, having turned out to see Land, were much dejected when they found it was not that which they expected; but they had further Hopes, when they came to understand that we did not know where we were. In this Doubt we took the fourth Course, and steer’d away East, for fear of falling to the Leeward of the Strait of the Sound, into which it would have been difficult to enter, by reason of the South and South-East Wind that reigns there constantly in that Season. But we came to know afterward that it was Many, when we saw exact Charts at Batavia, which placed that Isle just in ten Degrees eleven Minutes South Latitude. The Treasurer General shou’d us, that the first Day we went ashore, when we acquainted him with the Danger we had been in, he called an old Pilot who shou’d us in a great Chart that the Isle placed exactly as we found it. The Sign of being near the Land of Many, are
A Voyage to Siam.

Book II.

are three sorts of Birds, which the Sea-men call Bobinis, Frigates and Tropic Birds, or Straws or Tails, according to the French. The first fly up themselves to be catched with the Hand, when in the Fore-part of the Night they come and peck upon the Yards of the Ship, and the Lalt have Feathers in the Tail about twenty inches long, which one would take for Straws, seeing them at a distance, and that's the reason the French call them by that Name.

In all that long Passage we saw nothing remarkable, 'cept it were some Porpoises pretty different from those we formerly spoke of, as to Bigness, Shape and Colour; for they are bigger and whiter by one half, and have the Snout shorter, and almost round, as you may see by the Figure of them in the following Map of the Road of Batavia. Seeing they are fatter than the others, and that many took them at first for the Dors's, we thought they were the Fifth known to the Antients by the Name of Dolphins. We caught no Fish from the Time we put out from the Cape, the Sea being too rough for Fishing. We saw Grampus, which are like little Whales, and some others bigger, that spouted the Water up in the Air, above fifteen or sixteen foot high, what we could judge at the distance we saw them at.

Book III.

A VOYAGE TO SIAM.

The Third Book.

The Voyage from the Isle of Java to the Kingdom of Siam.

Chapter 7. We discovered a great Coast of Land, and standing in with it, Arrived at the found it to be the Isle of Java, where we the island to be far from it. This made us observe that that Island lies much more to the West, and by consequent is nearer by three Leagues to the Cape of Good-hope than it is marked in the Geographical Charts.

Therefore it was that we came in with the Land above threescore Leagues further up than the most Western point of that Isle which we
A Voyage to Siam. Book III.

look'd for. An error to be imputed to the Charm, and not to the inability of the Pilots, who all a-

long Sailed very exactly, and always kept reck-
oning that we should make the Land the same day
that we saw it, both at the Isle of Java and the

Cape of Good-hope, as we have already observ-

ed. The sight of these Lands seemed somewhat rare to
us; they are covered with Trees of a most lovely

verdure, which yield a pleasant finish to the
Ships that Sail along the Coast, at two or three
League's distance. We Coupled along that line
with so good a wind, that in a day and a half
we made the sixty Leagues which we had
run too far to the East, and Monday evening the

sixth of Augst, we got to the entry into the

Straits of the Sound which is made by the Isles of
Java and Sumatra.

But what surprized us more, and was a sign
of Gods particular Providence upon our Voyage,
the same evening that we saw the entry into the
Straits of the Sound, we made the Malacca,
which was separated from us by the bad weather
I mentioned, June 24. in the night time, and
which we had never seen since. Though my
Lord Ambassador and several others took it to be
the Fright, yet we could not be sure of that, be-
cause it was already late, and the weather dark.
We were not certain it was till eight days after
in the Road of Bengaum where we passed her
again. The Pilots who were aboard of her hav-
ing made the Strights in good time, put into it,
and having a Fair Wind came to the place of An-
couraging. But it being usual to shoot the Strights
of the Sound between the Princes Isle and San-
num, keeping as near as may be to the Princes Isle,
which

which we could not make plainly because of the
night, we were forced to tack and stand off to sea
all the night long. So that since we could not make
the belt of the fair weather which then we had,
which would have easily carried us beyond the
Princes Isle, were too low, and spent the rest of
the week in the Strights, which is not above
thirty Leagues in length, struggling and beating
against the Currents and contrary winds. One of
our Pilots assured us that the Sog of the East of
which he was aboard in an East-India Voyage,
was three full weeks stopped there, and could not
get to Bengaum but as the was towed with Boats.

We entered then the Strights of the Sound
three days after we made the land of Java, but
the Princes Island lying at the mouth of the strightly
between Java and Sumatera, and dividing it into
two, we entered by the more Northern Passage,
which is the larger and fatter between the Princes
Isle and Sumatera. We made many Tacks to dou-
ble the Isle of Cacacum (so called because of the
white Parrots that are upon that Isle, which in-
cidentally repeat that name) we did, I say, all that
lay in our power to double the Isle of Cacacum,
which lyeth pretty near to Sumatera, that so we
might stand in with the Land of Java: but all our
attempts were unsuccessful because the wind was
too weak, and Currents too strong in the middle of
the Channel. That which caused the Currents, is
because the water that for several Months has been
forced into the Strights by the South and South-
west-wind, which reign commonly from the Month
of March to September, set out again impetuously
during the other six Months of the year, being
sent back by the East and North-East winds.
A Voyage to Siam.

We had the wind so crost, and the Currents so contrary, that it was thought best to keep as close in as we could by the Shore of the Prince's Ille, by the help of some Breezes that came from the North, and which for some hours interrupted the great heats and dead calms that are common in that season in the Straights of the Sound.

By the help of those little Breezes we were in hopes by little and little to come up with the Land of Java, but it belied us both to double the Prince's Ille which is pretty big, and lies in the mouth of the Strait. After all, the view which we had of the Land and of several small Islands all decked in verdure comforted us a little, for the time which we lost in that Strait.

Nay we were like to have been stranded one night upon the Prince's Ille, as we endeavoured to bear close in with it. We had not observed that the Tide which was not perceived in the middle of the Strait was pretty strong near Land, and feeling we resolved to make along very near the Shore, because the Coast is fife and that within a Pottage of Land there is no ground to be found, that night we hove about into the Island, that we might recover what the Currents and Tides had made us lose the day before. Hardly were we got out of the strength of the Currents, when the Officer that was upon the Watch and the Seaman who were upon the Deck, took notice that the Ship ran apace towards Land. They had only time to talk about and stand off, which was done so much in the nick, that when the Ship was about, and the Sails trimmed, one might easily have thrown a stone on Shore, from the Pomp of our Ship.
in the Road of Bantam. The Javanese are very patient and strong, they seem to be strictly ruled, but the extraordinary heat of the Climate obliges them to go almost naked. They who live in the middle of the Hill are Mahometsans, and the rest who inhabit the Country are Mahometans, all Superstitious to excess. When they came on Board, we offered them Bread, Wine and Brandy, but there was not one of them that would take any thing, saying, that it was their dying time, and that their Law prohibited the tasting of Wine. Notwithstanding all this they are bold Robbers and Thieves. I saw one of them open in the day time carry off a Sennior Flot which he had fished to a line and held it by one end. It was to no purpose for him to cry out and make a noise; For the Javanee who held it only to one hand and row'd with the other, was too strong for him, and carried it clearly away. The whole Nation are not subject to this Vice, and there are some of them very faithful. One of them coming on Board of us to sell some small refreshments, he seemed to be an honest, true Gentlemen of the Ambassadors retinue, who could not go a shore to buy some things they stood in need of, traded with them what they denied against the time they had prefer. This Javanee was so true to his word, that the Ambassador having ordered his Flot full before the appointed hour, he nevertheless got into his Flot with his Provisions, and made so much huzz that he came up with the Ships and gave an account of the Commission and brokerage even to the bill forming.
Book III. A Voyage to Satan.

We did not come to light of the Road of Boos the Road of

As we had arrived at the Cape on the Arrival day of our Lord. This
to one of the fairest and most commodious Roads in the World. It is about eight or nine Leagues
in circumference. The Land on all sides is but

loosely inhabited. The Town of Banto which is pretty big,

lies at the middle of the Bay, and the houses of

it are all of Wood. Towards the middle of the

Road, there is a small Fort, where the King

lives, and where the Dutch, since they became

Masters of it keep a good Garrison, till they

have time to build a strong Fort, which is already

pretty well advanced. Batavia was here before a

Town of Trade especially for Pepper, where all the

Europeans entertained great Commerce. But for

these two or three years that it is fallen into the

hands of the Dutch, in the manner we shall here

after relate, some are suffered to come to it, and

all the Trade is removed to Batavia. Hear you

have the view of it as it appeared to us after we

came to an Anchor.

At first we design to go to Batavia to take in

fresh Provisions, but the Reason being already far

from us, we were afraid we might lose the Aukana;

that is to say, the proper time for Setting to Sea.

Besides the passage from Batavia to Batavia, the

not above fourteen or fifteen Leagues in length,

being very difficult, besides of Islands, Banks and

Rocks on all hands, it was thought convenient to

stop in the Road of Banto, that we might lose

time, and get more speedy relief for our sick

Men, who for most part were in a bad condition.

And
A Voyage to Siam. Book III.

And therefore my Lord Ambassador resolved first morning to send to Bantam to him who commanded in the Fort for the Dutch, and to demand permission of him to take in fresh provisions, and put our sick men on shore. That is the Sole re-\n

eign remedy for that distemper which the French call the Leuk-Exul, and which to speak properly, is nothing else but a corruption of the Blood caused by bad Food and evil Vittuals. This evil begins commonly in the Gums, which at first grow very red, then black, and at last entirely rot, so that to prevent the corruption from spreading farther, the rotten flesh must every day be cut off from about the Teeth, which easily drop out, if Remedies be not used. This corruption gets also into the Leg and Thighs, which swell and become livid. There is no curing of those that are ill of it, but by putting them on shore, and giving them wholesome Food. Some Christians bury them up to the neck in Sand for several days, others bath them in fresh water, and many times such Remedies have succeeded.

Before we came to an Anchor in the Road of Bantam the Chevalier de Furieu was by Orders from the Ambassador gone to the Town to pay a visit to the Governor, but he had no sooner palled a little Island, behind which we lay at Anchor, than he saw the Frigate also at Anchor, on the other side of that Island within three Leagues of Bantam, and steer'd straight towards her. Those who were on Board the Maligne were overjoyed at his coming, they being more concerned for us than we were for them, because of our being a far better Sailer than their Frigate, they thought we had been already a great way beyond Bantam. But

Book III. A Voyage to Siam.

But they having met with fairer winds than we did, in the course they had steer'd, they had been already four or five days in the Road, and heard no news of us.

The Chevalier de Furieu was informed of Monsieur de Tertre's arrival at Bantam, and of the Maligne and of Monsieur de Tertre's Lieutenant, in whom manner the Governor of Bantam received their Compliment.

They told him that they could not have Audience of the King, tho' they had long wait for it, and were put in hopes by the Dutch of obtaining it; that they could not do so much as speak to the Governor of their Nation, whom they have siste there, nor have leave to buy fresh Provisions.

The Lieutenant of the Fort made known to Mr. de Tertre in the name of the King of Bantam, and of the Governor who was sick, that the King's Affairs did not permit his Majesty, to suffer Strangers to come above; that his Throne was not yet well fixed; that his People repining at the present Government, longed for some Change, that they were ready every Monday to rise upon the first appearance of any Succours which they were made to expect from England, and that to the French ought not to take it ill, that that Prince was upon his Guard; and that the Dutch who were only concerned as his Allies and Friends, and who term'd only as Auxiliary Forces, should receive and obey his Orders. The French Officer being met at that answer, and thinking that he saw to the bottom of such an unwieldy procedure, replied that it would be thought very strange that the Dutch who in Europe make profession of keeping and maintaining Peace and good Intelligence toually with the French, would...
not grant them in the Indies, that which is not refused but to declared Enemies; that certainly the King his Master would take it extremely ill, that they should use his Ships; and that in short, it was well enough known that they could do anything at Bantam; that the King, of whose Authority they made a pretext to cloath their refusals, was wholly at their disposal, not and guarded by their Soldiers too. To these words the Dutch Lieutenant made answer, that it would be in vain for him to endeavour to remove out of Mr. de Terni's mind the disadvantageous suspicions, wherein he saw him prejudiced against those of his Nation, that the French would be undervalued if they would go to Batavia where the Dutch were the Masters, and where they would be made sensible of the respect those people had for the King, and of their esteem for the French Nation. It was to no purpose for Monsieur de Terni to complain, for that was all the answer he had so was obliged to return on Board again.

Next day the Governor of Bantam sent to Monsieur de Goyaux a great deal of fresh Provisions of the Fowl, Herbs and fruits of the Country; and Monsieur de Goyaux returned the Civility by a Present which he made him of many Curiosities of France. Some days after a Portuguese came on Board of the Frigate (that is the name they give to the Lords of Court) attended by four Husbands of the Natives. He bid his Interpreter tell the Captain that he came from the King his Master, to tell the French that that Prince was surprised to see them still at Anchor in his Road; that they should weigh with all expedition, and be gone from his Ports and Lands. Monsieur de Goyaux answered.

Book III. A Voyage to Siam.

The Governor sent to Batavia for fresh Provisions of the Fowl, Herbs and fruits of the Country; and Monsieur de Goyaux returned the Civility by a Present which he made him of many Curiosities of France. Some days after a Portuguese came on Board of the Frigate (that is the name they give to the Lords of Court) attended by four Husbands of the Natives. He bid his Interpreter tell the Captain that he came from the King his Master, to tell the French that that Prince was surprised to see them still at Anchor in his Road; that they should weigh with all expedition, and be gone from his Ports and Lands. Monsieur de Goyaux answered.
A Voyage to Siam.

Book III.

so much liberty, threatening to put the Dutch to the Sword, and Dethrone the King Regain, if they had Forces to affult them.

This news made the Captain of Frigate resolve to put back again to the Ormoo and inform the Ambassadors before he went further. He sent

Monsieur du Tertre the Lieutenant of the Frigate with him in his Boat, who himself gave the Ambassadors a relation of all these things in our Presence.

He added that he had been told that the Magnifia was not yet in Siam, and that three weeks or a Month after would be time enough to set out for Siam.

The Ambassadors wondered much at this Conduct, however, he sent to Bamum to ask leave to take in Wood and Water, thinking that the Governor of the Fort would have more regard to his Character, and grant him a Passe (a kind of very light Boat which are commonly made use of in those Parts) to carry Monsieur Van Reede's Letter to the General of Bamum. The Ambassadors would have no mention made of the Fide, because he had already caused them to be put on Shore for some days in a little neighbouring Island, where they were to have Tents pitched, and to be looked after till they should recover.

The Chevalier de Farnoux being charged with these Orders put off again from Bamum. At the same time we weighed and gave warning to the Frigate by a Gun to come and Anchor by us in the Road, at a pretty distance from Bamum, in expectation of the Governor Anfver. The Magnifia fished our Ship with seven Guns, as far out by her, and we answered with five. About an hour after noon the Chevalier de Farnoux came on Board again, and brought the same Answer that had been given to the Lieutenant of the Frigate, without being able to speak to the King, or to the Governor, who they tell said was sick. He added that they told him, that they had sent on Board the first Ship that came to an Anchor, all the Ships prisoners they could find in the Town.

When the Ambassadors heard that very Answer, he ordered presently put to under Sail, and stand away for Bamum. We were two days and a half in our Passage from the Road and Anchor, by reason of a Multitude of Islands and Banks that lye in the way, and besides, none of our Pilots had ever been there before. However we fetched our Course fortunately enough, by means of a very exact and large Chart which by very good luck one of our Pilots had found out amongst others that he had.

For comprehending the Reasons of this Conduct, which seemed to be so strange in the Dutch, it will be proper to give a brief History of the Prince Regent, who hath made several Reversions in his Kingdom, and given occasion of War in Europe.

Several Reversions have happened, and we are now at peace, being weary of wearing the Crown, reigned over the Government of Affairs into the Hands of his Son, and confined himself for the future to his Study and Pleasures. This the King of young Prince had a Mind to govern after his Father's own Fashion, without any regard to the Instruction his Father gave him at his Coronation. He began by removing all those from Court, to reform it who were no longer necessary.
who had had the greatest Share in the Administration of Affairs under the late Reign; whether it was that he was displeased with their Conduct, or that he looked upon them as Secret Spies, that would give his Father an Account of all that he should act in the Government. Amongst others, he banished two Princes, whom his Father had chiefly recommended to him. This was a sensible Blow to Sultan Agon, who began to be convinced, but too late, that it was easier to quell a Scepter, than to repeat of it after one hath laid it down. He could not forbear to complain of it to his Son, and to tell him, that it surprised him to see that his Recommendation, and the wise Counsels which he had given him, had made but so small an Impression upon his Mind; but the young King, struck with this Expostulation, which he looked upon as a strong Reproach, gave Orders immediately to have these two Lords dispatched. This, conferring with the Solicitations of the ancient Subjects, who looked upon themselves to be oppressed under this new Government, and with the fiercest Feudatories, as some have given it out, which People who found their Interest in the bad Understanding between Father and Son, forced the King, prevailed upon the old King to take Arms, and endeavour by force, to recover a Kingdom, which of his own free Consent he had just before willingly resigned. He marched then at the Head of a great Army against his Son, who was soon forsaken of all, belonged in the Capital Town, and upon the point of surrendering, or of being delivered up Prisoner to the Conqueror. Being reduced to this Extremity, he resolved to put all to a Rest.
A Voyage to Siam. Book III.

publicly, that he would assist the Prince his Ally, that the Success he would depend upon himself, and get his Proceedings approved by the East India Company in Holland. He presently sent for the Her St. Martin, Major General of Batavia, declares him Chief of the Enterprise, and having ordered him to muster together as many Forces as he could of the Garrison, and Townspeople, both Europeans and Indians, he put them on Board twelve Ships, which were then in the Road of Batavia. So soon as the Her St. Martin arrived before Banjas, he made a Défense, and found but little resistance. Then, without giving the Enemy time to take breath, he marched with his Troops to their Trenches, and at the second Attack forced them to raise the Siege in disorder.

After this Victory the Sultan Agus commanded the Gates to be opened, and received the Her St. Martin with all his Forces into the Town. The Dutch finding themselves Masters of the Capital Town, resolved to invade the whole Kingdom, and to make sure of the Person of both Kings. They sent a good Guard of Dutch over Sultan Agus, whom they had in their Hands, under Pretex of doing him Honour, and fear

Book II. A Voyage to Siam. Book III.

victor him up Prisoner to his Son, who to punish his Father for his Revolt, would presently have put him to Death; but the Dutch prevailed him not to embroil his hands in the Blood of him who had given him Life. So that he thought it enough to shut him up in a very close Prison, without allowing him the Company of his Wives. Nevertheless, he hath remitted his Severity as to this last point, since he is become peaceable Professor of the Kingdom.

Some days after the young King commanded the English and French to withdraw, under pretext of Jealousy he had of them, and that he had been told they favoured the Party of the King his Father. The French carried away their Eke-fell and left Banjas, but the English proceeded against the Dutch for the Violence they did them under the Cloak of the King's Authority, and leaving the Town, left all their Effects to their Warehouses. This was the Matter that caused the great Disturbance that hath made so much Noise between the two Nations, and which was not determined when we came out of Europe.

After this Digression concerning the Revolution that hath happen'd in the Isle of Java, we must now pursue our Voyage again. Saturday the Eighteenth of August, betwixt five and six Clock in the Evening we came to Anchor in the Road of Banjas, amidst fourteen or eighteen large Ships belonging to the Dutch East India Company, and a great number of Banks which we found there at Anchor. This is a very fair and safe Road, as may be seen by the Chart.
A Voyage to Siam.

Book III.

When the Chevalier de Fourkin had thus given the Ambassador an account of his Voyage, and assured him that the General would give his Excellence all the Marks of Respect and Esteem which were due to his Character; he added that the Jefinis would not be so well received in this Town as they had been at the Cape; that the General of Batavia had put a Guard upon a Father of their Society lately come from Tongaun, and that he had been enforced to his House for having assisted Catholics who applied themselves to him in their Spiritual Necessities. Having considered a little what was best for us to do, by the Advice of the Ambassador, we took the same Course that we had done at the Cape of Good-hopes, which was to go into the General.

Father Fontany and I arrived at the Town about ten of the Clock in the Morning. The Officer who was upon Guard at the Gate carried us to the chief Treasurer, who introduced Strangers to the General. After the first Compliments we told him who we were, and prayed him to present us to the General, that we might pay him our Respect. He promised us Audience of his Excellence, (for that is the Title commonly given to the General of Batavia) the very same day. But seeing it was now past ten of the Clock, and that no Audience was given till towards the Evening; we desired to know of him whether or not it would be taken ill if we went to see one of our Fathers who came from Tongaun, and was in General Spelman's Garden. He told us that we might do what we pleased without Offence, and that he would give us his Boat to carry us thither, but that it must be after Dinner, because it was...
A voyage to Saint.

Book III.

A Description of the Town of Batavia, and
the general

Port, standing without the Town, but
in the City, that it is only parted from it
by the River which serves for a Ditch, and the
River being covered all over with little Boats,
one may coast it at all times. This Town was
built by the late General de la Salle, that he
might take the Air there during the extreme
hot of Summer, which is almost constant in
Batavia, and that he might treat the Officers
of the Company, and the Ambassadors and Envoy
of Prussia or Foreign States. It consists in two
great Galleries open on all hands, which form a
double square. The Gallery at the end, which
connects upon the other is extremely wide, from
both of them you enter into Halls with several
Closets, and all this is narrowed with Graf-plant
and Gardens; on the right hand there is a Mo-
tague full of several sorts of Animals, in Sinks,
Hills, Wild-goats, Antelopes, Elephants, Snails,
Ducks and Geese of a singular kind. On the left
hand are the Gardens and Country-Houses of the
Town's people of that quality. Behind it there
is a little Portico consisting of three low Rooms
and a Kitchen, which is frequented from the
Galleries by a large Court that reaches on one side
to the Ditches of the Port, and on the other as
far as the Sea. A little River runs under one of
these Galleries and ends the Graf-plant, which
forces to make Ponds where Firths are kept. See
to.jpg: the Building was only made for taking the first

Page 74 of 196
A Voyage to Siam.

Book III.

fruit. Air, there is no regularity in the whole, and every part be regular enough. The Gardens are full of Flowers at all times, but we saw none there that were rare; the Trees are Orange, Lime and Pomegranate Trees planted in rows that make lovely Walks.

There we found Father Esqui, who having been already informed of our arrival, impatiently expected us. He is not to be exprest how much to see father Dominius Fusi, who was the superior of the Mission. It was a great grief to many good Christians to see them leave the Country, and many tears were shed on both sides. Nay, if these Fathers had not left them some hopes of their return, there would have been no comforting of them. Every Idolatrous Mandarin bewailed their departure, and the Christians conceived to great an aversion to those whom they suspected to be the causes of it, that they would not confess any more, incessantly calling for their first Masters and ancient Fathers. This we were told by a Churchman in the Indies who was a person of good credit, and very well acquainted with affairs of that nature.

These two Fathers arrived at Batavia the twenty third of December, in a Dutch Ship that by a fog the Storm was forced off of Siam whither they were bound. Father Fusi stayed at Batavia for a Passage to Siam, where he was to receive by way of Moor Ordon from his Superiors, and Money to perform his Voyage before he returned to Europ.
A Voyage to Siam. 

Book III. A Voyage to Siam.

... Father Ferreira was himself gone for them six weeks beforehand, and in that design went on board a ship of Madras.

Father Domenico Fausti is a Neapolitan, and he came with that great Company of Jesuits, whom the famous Father de Rudder had obtained from the Rev. Father General for the Indies. So that he had been almost thirty years in that Country, where he hath always laboured as a true Apostle, with admirable success and benefaction. He lived eight years in Cambodiana, where he Baptized above four thousand Souls with his own hands, and fourteen whole years in Siam, where he hath Baptized eighteen thousand. He hath suffered long and in form Imprisonments: He hath been eight days and eight nights with the cage about his neck which is a great and heavy Ladder, and eight or nine Months in Irons. He hath been committed to death, and other times once upon the brink of Martyrdom. His life hath been almost nothing else but a continual Martyrdom; he hath made fifteen Voyages by Sea, and hath been five times in danger of being killed by the Indians: he hath lived ten or eleven years in Siam without daring to appear abroad, keeping himself in the day time hid in a little Boat, and in the night time making his excursions through the Towns of the Country, visiting the Christians by turns, Preaching, Confessing, Baptizing, and administering the Sacraments with immense Troubles.

It is not from him that we came to know their things, he is humble and modest, and we offered many great Virtues in him during our abode at Bethania and Siam. We were particularly charmed with his mildness towards all People, his reverent veneration in speaking of those who had persecuted him with greater violence, with his continual union with God, his tender Devotion that makes him melt in tears every time he says Mass, or hear it, his patience in suffering all things without complaining, and with his zeal for the salvation of Souls. In short, he is a Man really Apostolical, and would receive Eloquies at Rome, whether he be called to judge himself, if his Virtues were known there as they are in the Indies.

When the Arrival of these two Fathers was The calned-known at Batavia, not only the Portuguese who seek of the five there, but the Catholics also of other Nations of the Indies to consult that are there, as we were told, in great numbers come the Suez daily to see them, were present at their ceremonies.

Masses on Sundays and Holy-days, and confessed to them. Sometimes after Father Fausti went away in a Portuguese Ship for Macao, whether Father Fausti thought it not fit to accompany him, left the Magistrates of that Town might force him to return to Tanquin, with the Ambassadors whom they were about to send thither, because that Father Fausti was extremely well known and respected there.

The zeal of the Catholics made too great a noise at Batavia, and so great was the concourse of People that came flocking to Father Fausti, that the Protestant Ministers complained to the General, that a Jesuit performed the publick Exercise of the Catholic Religion in Batavia; the Mahometans and idolatrous Worship and Sacrifice be permitted there, and the Ministrats don’t at all trouble the Magistrates with their Scruples upon that account. Upon their Remonstrances, the General sent a Secretary at the Fathers door, to hinder that Catholic from entering his House, and sent him
A Voyage to Siam

Book III

word that he desired him not to walk abroad in the Town, but with a Guard to wait upon him.

After a long Conference with Father Palli, we returned to the Treasurers House, thinking that the hour of Audience drew nigh. About four of the Clock in the Afternoon we heard the Drums, Fife, and Trumpets of the Fort, not being far from it. Then the Treasurer told us, that now we might go wait upon his Excellency. He took us into his Boud, and would needs force us to sit above him. We quickly got to the Palace, where we found the Governors Guards a Mustering before him, in a large Court. There was four Companies of Foot and two Troops of Horse of them, of about an hundred Men apiece, all Men of good mean, well armed, and clothed in one Livery. Their Coat was yellow, their Breeches red and very wide, and all of them had Silk Stockings. The Horse Guards were mounted on Persian Horses, which, indeed are not very big, but are light and full of Merit. These Horses seem to be hard in the mouth, hang upon the Bit, and always pull up their heads, but I believe these faults proceed from their Bridles and the neglect of breaking them well.

The Matter being over, we went up a pair of Stone Stairs on the outside of a great Hall, where we found Guards and the Generals Pages, all clothed after the same fashion, with this difference only that the last wear no Swords. The Treasurer desired us to stay in that Hall, until he went and spoke to the General. A moment after he came back and led us through a Gallery into another Hall, which was nothing near so big as the

Book III

A Voyage to Siam

the former. There we found the General with the General Sir or the Friends of whom two spoke very good of those in Servants the last.

We could not have expected greater Intents with Civility or Testimonies of Friendship than we much Civility received from him at this first Audience. The and Goodness that appeared in his looks, his careness and obliging deportment sufficiently convinced us of the sincerity of his heart and actions. He ordered our Letters Patent for being the Kings Mathematicians, to be read to him, and prayed us to give him an account of the Observations we made at the Cape of Good Hope, still praising us, before the Gentlemen that attended him.

When he understood that the Reverend Father had lodged us at the Cape, and how he had received and treated us, He promised he would not be short of him, and that if we had a design to come on Shoahe, he would treat us with Father Fison, to whom of this day forward he gave all sorts of liberty for our letters. He told us that the place was very commodious for making Observations in, and that on the one hand we had a prospect of the Sea, and on the other a valt Plain reaching out of sight, and that, in short, if the weather offered fair, and that there was any curious observation to be made, he himself would be present at it.

We made the best answer we could to all his goodness, affurming him that the King would be informed of it, and that my Lord Ambassador would refer it. At length, after a three hours conference, which was only cut off by the, Sweet-meats and Drinks to the King, the Royal Family, the Ambassador, and our own, which he drank to us, he suffered us with much ado to withdraw.
A Voyage to Siam.  

A Voyage to Siam.

Book III.

withdraw. He waited on us to the end of a long Gallery which leads into the first Hall, and ordered the Governor of a Province and the Treasurer, not to leave us before we were fairly returned to General Spermoni’s Garden, where we were to lodge. As we went out of the Hall we found a Coach, with two Pages carrying Torches to conduct us to our Lodging. We refused forever we could make, we were necessitated to obey, and it was a new sight to see two Jesuits in the Generals Coach riding through the capital City of the Indies.

We soon got to our Lodging, where Father Focaio waited for us, and was not a little astonished to see us come home in that equipage. No sooner were we got there, but a plentiful Supper was brought in from the Generals Palace, who during all the time we were at Batavia allowed us a Magnificent Table for a dozen of Guests, where we were served by his Officers in fine china and plate, with all neatness, and distincly, and plenty imaginable.

Next day Father Focaio entreated the Father Superior to carry him on Board and present him to my Lord Ambassador, that he might pay his respects unto him, and thank him for his goodness in concerning himself in his liberty. We were all three carried thither in the General’s Coach, which, as he sent us word, he wholly left to us to be made use of as often as we had occasion.

The four Fathers who remained on Board were in pain for us; because we could not find them word how we were, and they were apprehensive that some unwelcome accident might have

have befallen us at Batavia. But they were much surprised when they saw us return in a Handsome Challop, with the Dutch Flag aboard and all the marks of Grandeur that attend the General, except his Guards. My Lord Ambassador to whom we gave an account of all that passed, received Father Focaio very kindly, and offered him his Passage to Stamm. Monsieur de Podiervans, showed him the like Civilities; so that it was immediately resolved upon that the Father should Embark with us and compleat the rest of the Voyage.

Privately after it beloved us to go aboard again with some instruments to observe the night following. But the sky was so overcast both night and day all the time we were at Batavia, that we could make but very few Observations, and these too did not appear to us to be sure enough to deserve to be communicated to the public.

Affoon as we came aboard we went all six to visit the General with Father Focaio. He received us with the same manner of kindness and good will, as he had done the day before. It is true, he complained a little of the conduct of Father Focaio, who had been rendred suspected to him because of his Zeal in afflicting and instructing the Catholics, adding, that he was obliged to see the Laws of the East-India Company put in Execution; that he believed we would not think this proceeding either ungentle or unjust; that he prayed us to observe matters; and to carry ourselves in relation to Catholics that he might not be reproached for any testimonies of Friendships and Esteem that he had already expressed towards
A Voyage to Siam. Book III.

us, and was ready ill to officiate upon all occasions. We made answer in Portuguese that his Excellence should be satisfied with our Cordial, and that he should never have cause to repent the favours which hitherto he had heaped upon us, and was still willing to honour us with for the future.

Then we fell to Discourse on several matters, we talked of News, and particularly of the French King, whose Glory and Greatness the General seemed to admire. Before he let us go which was pretty late, he showed us several Curiosities of Japan, amongst others two human Figures of a kind of Pfaltzer, extremely well done, and clad in Silk after the manner of the Japanese, one of a Lord and the other of a Lady. He also showed us certain Trees whose Roots were crested within mimetic and very porous thorns where they are so intimated that they receive all their nourishment from the water that is now and then thrown upon them.

'Thus we were not too much obliged as we are

To Monseigneur Campibù General of Batavia, yet we could not but speak well of him: His Merit has raised him by degrees to the highest place of the Indies, which at present he is worthyly discharged after he hath been twice President of the Company of Japan. He is about fifty years of age, somewhat taller than ordinary, with honest, honest, and circumspect Man, speaking little, but very judiciously and to purpose. These qualities, accompanied with a mild popular way of Carriage, have got him the love of his own Country, and the esteem of Strangers, both Europeans and Indians.

We were told that he had some Pictures in his

Book III. A Voyage to Siam. 119

Claret, and amongst others, one of our Saviours praying in the Garden of Olives, with their words written with his own Hand, 

Ora et Labora.

The days following we went and visited the chief Officers of the East-India Company; all of them shewed us great Civilities; nay, many of them returned our Visit at the Companies Garden. We were visited also by the Catholics of all sorts and conditions, who desired to receive the Sacraments; but that we might not displease the General, nor bring the Catholics into Trouble, we appointed such as were able to come on board of us, and confined the rest to privately, either in their Housés at Home, or in the Place where we were, that no notice was taken of. Father Baczy especially, took no Rest all the while that we were with him. For having upon our coming, got Liberty to go about everywhere, he was taken up from Morning to Night in comforting and confessing here and there all that stood in need of his Assistance.

It is with the Catholic Religion in Batavia, The Catholic and in the Indies Subject to the Dutch, as it is in Holland. All sorts, and even Idolatry is tolerated, provided they pay a certain Tribute to the Magistrates. None but the Catholic Religion is prohibited; not that they reckon it the worst of all, but because they look upon it as the most dangerous, and fear that many who do not profess their Interest before their Salvation, would embrace it if they knew it.

We were confidently told that some Months before, the Prov. who are very numerous, had offered a vast Sum of Money to the East-India...
Company do have taken to build a Catholic Church, office in the Towne, or the Inhabitants, and that they will engage therein before, as per former charted Letters a year. They after having been prayed to the Council of the States, were referred to the Chief of the Company in Holland, but there is no hope that they will grant it. Hence to Cordova, for fear, it is full, they desired the Masters in Rosas. They set four Prunelers into these, two where they preach every Sunday in Litchi, the one in the Fort, and the other at the Town. A third where they preach in the Office, which is the most common Language of the Country. And a fourth for the Jews, who are in pretty considerable numbers here.

As for Reynolds, it is the plantation Town in all the lands, and would again to every headless, Plant in Russia. The land here is flat, and broad, all in a straight Line, behind a large River, that is always greasy, and part of them are even divided into the breadth Ways, and lovely Canals washed, which in all Landing are filled by a great River, that at the Rice discharges it full into the Sea.

They have contrived the Wars of this River, and the Rivers of the Town and Fort, at high Charges, because the Ground is level and easy to be levelled. The Water is a great Ground to the Towns, and a great Convenience for the blackboys, whenever any desire to go to Fort, or by Water in Boat, which they please.
please. For during the Heat, they walk under
the Shadoof of the Trees; and the Streets are so
hid, having a Defent towards the Canal, that
the Rain-water runs off of them as fast as it falls.
The Houfs are nearer full than the Streets; the
truth is, they are not very magnificent, neither
inside nor outside, but they are pretty and com-
modious. Every thing falls there; the Walls
are as white as Snow, there is not the least Spot
to be seen upon them, nor upon the Furniture,
which is all polished, and things like Looking-
Glasses.

Though Banzia be but five Degrees from the
Line, and by consequence in a very hot Climate,
yet the Houfs are built in such a manner, that
they have always the Cool, by reason of certain
little Courts contrived in the middle, where for
eight or nine Months in the Year the Sun never
shines but at Noon. It is fortified after the Eu-
ropean manner, encompassed with Ditches full of
Water, and in a Ground that is all cut by Chan-
nels, which makes it difficult to besiege it. The
Citadel hath four Bastions faced and mounted
with a great number of brass Guns. There is a
good Gardien kept in it, not only to hold it out
against Indians and Europeans, and to secure the
other Places in case of necessity, but also to shew
the Greatness and Power of the Company to Am-
bassadors and Princes, who come thither from all
Places of the Indies. Banzia is of a very large
Circumference, and nevertheless extremely full of
People of all sorts of Nations, of Malay, Moors,
Chinese, who pay so much Tribute a Head, for
the free Excite of Commerce; of these last
there are four or five thousand there, who fer

rest
A Voyage to Siam.  

Book III.

most part find little that they might not submit themselves to the Town, when they had their selfs Master of Ceremonies. The Chinese being an industrious and skillful People, improve every thing of Nature, and without their Help it would be hard to live comfortably there. They labour the Land, there is hardly any other Artificer but them, and in a word, they do every thing almost. Some of them are very rich, and we were told that one of them died lately, who left behind him a Million in coined Money.

Having leave of a Catholic Soldier, that their People had their Temple and Sepulchres abroad in the Country, about half a League from Batavia, we pray’d him to conduc’d us thither that we might see their Ceremonies. In that Wall we see the Avenues of the Town at Indiar, they are very broad Walks or Aisles, that reach out of light. On each side they are bordered with certain Woods always green, which are heightened, and at least as high as our Dry Town, beautified with Country Houses and Gardens kept in good order, which belong to the chief Towns people. As we went out of Batavia we found three or four of these Walks, all which at their end, one at the chief Gate, by which we went out, we took the middlemost, which was our way to the place intended. If the other Gates that look into the Country have as lovely Avenues as this, nothing more pleasant can be imagined.

Within half a League we found the first burying Place of the Chinese in a Coppis Wood, where they had made several small Paths, which all led to several Sepulchres. There it is where
Book III. A Voyage to Siam.

the Clans of mean Quality are buried, and indeed the Place is somewhat in disorder, and there is nothing of State in their Tombs: A few Steps from hence stands the little Fort of Siam; it has four Battlements, not all faced, with a ferry Ditch. The Dutch keep fifty or sixty Men in Garrison there. Beyond that Fort we entered into a Wood, or rather into a large Champlain full of little Hills, covered over with Groves and Thickets on all Sides, which yielded a pretty pleasant Prospect, and in that second Burying-place the Clans of Benezet inter the Person of Quality of their Nation. Upon the top of one of those little Hills I saw an Arbour very well made, and a Table standing in the middle of it, with Beecches all round it, where near forty People might commodiously sit. There I saw a great many very little and odd amick Idols hanging upon the Branches that covered this Arbour. They say that the Benezet make Pearls for the Dead, and bring them thither for them to eat; most part of their Tombs are so many little Mausoleums, very neat and pretty; here is the Figure of one of the loveliest of them, by which you may judge of the rest, for they are all made after the same fashion, with this difference only, that some have Dragons in lead of Lyons upon the Gate, as you enter into them, and that they are more or fewest Steps high, according to their Magnificence.

Being come out of the Burying-Place, we heard the Noise of Cymbals and little Bells, and following the Sound, came to a little Temple of the Chinese, where their Priests were assembled to offer a Sacrifice. That Temple is built much in the manner of our little Churches, both without
Book III. A Voyage to Siam.

whereof, and of four little Bells which two Priests who assisted the Superior held, all came out in cadence from the Altar with a flow and modest Pace, making some Tumus, sometimes following one another, and sometimes putting themselves in a Ring, and always singing in a manner that was not unpleasant.

During the Sacrifice, two Minstrels came away from the Altar, and lighted Paililles and Candles upon all the Altars, for before the Chief Altar that was at the end of the Chappel, there was one also on the Left-hand. When they advanced to, or returned from the Altars, they made low Bows. Now the Candles seeming to be surprized to see us, we told them that we were Priests of the most high God of Heaven and Earth, who were going to China to preach the only true Religion. They gave us to understand that they knew there was a great many of our Fathers in their Country, who were very able Doctors, and highly esteemed by the Emperor and great Men of the Kingdom. We had a mind to see all to the very last, but being informed that that Sacrifice was performed for shewing the Devil out of a sick Person, and that the Ceremony would continue till night; after we had stay'd there near an hour, we went our ways, much playing the Bambelot of these People, and being very desirous to endeavour the Conversion of their Countrymen.

About the Twenty-fourth, the Eve of St. Law-ns, my Lord Ambassador did the General the Cavalry to give him notice, that he would not have him to be surprized; if in the Evening he heard Gaus fired in the Road, that it was the Custom...
A Voyage to Siam.

Custome of the Kings Ships to honour the Festival of St. Louis by such Rejoysings. The Ambassador charged another Jesuit and me with this Commission, and we went to the Palace when the General was at Council. So soon as he was told that we waited for him, he came to us, and we made him our Compliment in the Name of the Ambassador. He was sensibly obliged by that Civility, and said that the French shou’d have greater Respect than the English would do in such a case. He asked us if it was the King’s Birthday, because then he would take a Share in our Rejoyings, and tesifie his Respect for that great Monarch, by a Discharge of all the Guns of the Fort and Ships. But being informed that by that publique Expresion of joy we honoured the Festival of St. Louis King of France, whose Name the King bore; I am very sorry, Fathers, said he, that I cannot do in Honour of St. Louis, what, with all my heart I would have done in Honour of Louis the Great. When we took our Leave of him, he made us a thousand Offers of Service, and obliged us to promise him that we would not trust our Letters to any but him, and that we should do the Same when we wrote from China to France, that he would take that Commission upon himself, that he might entertain a Correspondence with us. We embraced the Liberty he gave us, and entrusted him with our Letters at our Departure. Being come out of the Palace we went on Board to give the Ambassador an Account of what we had done, and to Comfort the Catholics who were to be there next Morning. When we were got within three Mile-quick from the Ocean, we saw his fire seventeen Guns.

Book III.

Guns, and the Maligne thirteen, which were followed by several Turret’s, and some Valleys of small Shot.

We were informed at Batavia, that it is not now so difficult to enter into China as formerly, and that the Emperor had a mind to try whether Freedom of Trade would encrease the Wealth of his Empire or not. It is said the Dutch laid hold on that Occasion, and this Year sent aフォール Embassie with Presents to the Emperor of China, that they might obtain the Liberty of Commerce in his Dominions, and that upon the News thereof, the English had sent also one of their Ships to Canton; but that they would not let those who were on board come ashore, and that they were obliged to return back again with the lost of their Time, Freight and Goods.

Sunday in the Evening, the five and twentieth of August, all that were ashore had Orders forthwith to come on board. Before we embarked we went all seven to the Palace, to take our leave of the General, and to thank him for all his Civilities. We promised him never to forget his Favours, and to pray God that he would reward him in another Life. He spoke very obligingly to us, and addressing himself to Father Puchy; I was in good hope, Father, said he, that I might have fitted you with a Palliasse for Siam in one of our Ships; but seeing you will not part from your Fathers, I will not be against your Design. Once more I detain you, that you would give me occasion to serve you. Having thanked him a thousand times, we took our Leaves with hearts full of Gratitude. Next day he sent us his Boat.
A Voyage to Siam. Book III.

to carry us on board, and therein a great quantity of fine Bullett, dry Fish, Prots, and other Provisions for Father Sauer. He knew very well that we were magnificently treated by Monsieur de Vaubanrent at the Ambassadors Table, and that we wanted for nothing, but he could not tell if the same Favour would be shewd to Father Sauer. Before we parted from Batavia we informed our selves of the Dutch Government in the Indies, and the principal Points of it are as following.

The Generalship is the highest Office: it gives him who enjoys it a Right over every thing without exception: it is given for Life, but revocable at the Companies pleasure; the General may lay down his Place after three Years service. The Council of State consists of the General, the Director General, and six Councillors. The Plenary of Voices carries it in the Decison of Affairs; but the Generals, who have commonly but two Voices pass over this Formality, when they answer for the Success of any Affair. The Places of Councillors are the Rewards of considerable Services done to the Company. They have a Salary of two thousand Livres a Month, and the General has but twelve thousand Livres a Year, and the Charges of Housekeeping defray'd. But being he hath all in his Power, without being obliged to give an Account, it may be said that he has what he pleases. Every Councillor has his Province, and the Affairs relating to it must be managed by him. The Great or Superior Council, which is the highest Judicature of the Country, and judges severally in all Causes Civil and Criminal, consists of a President, a Vice:

Book III. A Voyage to Siam.

Vice-president, and two Proctors Generals. That Tribunal may Judge and Condemn the General himself. The third Council is that of the Sheriffs, who take Cognizance of Matters concerning the Town.

The fourth, which is like a Prefidal Court in Rome, judges Causes of least importance, to the Sum of an hundred Crowns, without appeal. The Director General holds a second Rank; all that concerns Trade passes through his Hands, and he is obliged to give an Account of it. Next to the Councillors of State for the Government, are the Governors of the Provinces, to the number of six, of Commanders, who reside at Pooleart, of Ambrosia, the Capital of which is Vittoria, of Tarsus, the King whereof hath been obliged to quit his Kingdom to the Company, and consent himself with a Pension of twelve hundred Crowns, of Celos, who resides at Columbus, and of Malta. This last Government has sometimes Governors, and sometimes none at all. The most considerable next to the Governors of Provinces, are the chief Merchants, the Commanders of Places, and the Prefidents or Heads of Factories.

As for War, next to the General, all the Command rests upon the Major-General. He that has that Charge at present is a French-man by birth, and is called the Heri St. Martin. That Command is afterwards divided amongst the Captains of Batteries, who are Colonels; when they are abroad out of the Town. They have twelve thousand Men of Regulated Forces, and an hundred and fifty Ships; there is besides a Boy-lift or Commander of the Town of Batavia.
A Voyage to Siam. Book III.

Monday morning the 26th. we put out of the Road of Batavia with a fair wind. Betwixt eight and nine a Clock in the Evening, it being pretty dark, we made all of a sudden a Ship as big as our own, within two Mijquet-deux of us, bearing down upon us before the wind. We presently hailed her and asked who were on Board, but it was to no purpose; for no body made answer. In the mean time the wind being good the ship was presently up with us. By her way of working it was thought at first she intended to run us on Board in the quarter, and perceiving her low Sail furled as if she had been to fight, it was not doubted but that in Boarding of us she would pour in a whole Broadside. No Body was furled at that surprize, but all seemed ready to do their Duty. The clatter that the Seamen and Souldiers who were upon the Watch kept, some running to their Arms and others minding the Sails, soon awaked those that were asleep; so that in a trice all were upon the deck.

The Ambassadour perceiving that this Ship had run her Bolt-sprit into our Stern, and that no Enemy appeared, concluded that they who were on Board had no ill design. He thought it enough to command fire and twenty or thirty small shot to be fired amongst them, as a warning to them to be better upon their Guard another time. But the other Ship having with her Bolt-sprit done some damage to our Galleries, got clear of her self, without any Seamen appearing on Board.

That adventure occasioned various reasoning. Those of most sense were of the opinion of the Ambassadour and Memfan de l’Audaisue, who attributed it to a careles working of the Ship. The

Book III. A Voyage to Siam.

The truth is, if she had had any bad design, she would not have failed to fire her Guns, when she laid us on board, and to have poured in a volley of small-shot amongst us. We were informed at Siam by Hollander that came from Batavia after us, that it was one of their Ships coming from Pulauleur and that all the Men on Board were drunk or asleep.

The wind was good, and so that accident did not at all hinder us to pursue our Voyage. It was not long before we got to the entry of the Streight of Banks, which is made by an Ile so called and the Ile of Sumatra. The Banks and Shelves that are at the entry of this Streight, make it a difficult passage for those that are not acquainted with it. We had a Dutch Pilot on Board and a very able Man, who had several times before pass that Streight, and for all that, tho we continually also heaved the Head, our Ship stuck aground, and so did the Frigate too; But the Ground being overy, we were in no danger, and having put out an Anchor at a distance in deeper water, we weighted our selves off again without any prejudice.

The wind continuing fair in a short time we repassed the Line. We felt it a great deal better in this place encompassed with Land, then when we pulled it the first time out at Sea; before we came to the Cape. Calms are not so much to be dreaded here, because of winds that reign there and blow long time from the Land, and sometime from the Sea. The last way of Sailing in those Calm Seas that are as smooth as a Mill-pond, is to keep always along the Shore, in twelve, fifteen or twenty Fathom water; as

never
A Voyage to Siam.

Book III.

never go out of sight of Land, as we did, observing this Circumstance, you have always the advantage of coming to an Anchor, when you please: which you will be forced to do very often, because of the Currents, that set in to Land, and of certain strong Gulls and Turbines, which commonly blow from the Isle of Sumatra. Some days after we left us from Batavia; we were all of us in a sudden surprized with one of those Turbines, which put us into great fear, because all our Sails were then aboard, but the diligence that was used in taking of them in, cleared us of the danger.

October 7, we began to make the Land of Asha, and the first we traded was the Point of Malden. We all felt a secret joy for those places that had been watered with the sweat of St. Francis Xavier, and to find our selves in these Seas so famous for his Voyages and Miracles. We publicly and daily invoked the assistance of that great Saint, after the Litanies of the Virgin, on Board. We then ranged along the Coasts of Sella, Patana, and Paltam, whole Kings are Tributary to the King of Siam; but the Dutch have all the Trade to these Kingdoms.

September 6. Muster de Vanderlust. D' Herbouille, one of the Gentlemen of the Ambassadors Retinue, died on Board the Frigate, in the Flower of his Age. He was handsome, Difcreet, and the eldest Son of a very Ancient and Rich Family in Normandy. His Dilemper was a bloody-Flux, common enough in the North, especially to those who eat too much Fruit, as this young Gentleman did during the five or six days that he was at Batavia. We had notice of his Death by the Frigates hanging their Colours at sight of the Clock, in the Morning.

Book III. A Voyage to Siam.

Morning, and in the Evening we came to know the time of his obsequies, by means of five Guns slowly fired one after another.

Funeral of Sea are performed with great Ceremonies. Having fagl some Prayers, they wrap up the Body in a Linen Cloath, eye a great lieu to the Feet, and upon a Plank to which it is made fast, let it gently drop into the Sea. Next day, all that were Priests, laid a Mafi on Board of our Ship, for the rest of his Soul.

At length, September 25, we came in sight of the River of Siam, and next day to an Anchor three Leagues from the Bar, which is at the entry of it. The sight of that Kingdom raised an incredible Joy in all of us, after the dangers and fatigues of a tedious Voyage. There had been but little talk till then of the Conversion of the King of Siam, which was the cause of the Embassage, but at that time it was almost the subject of every discourse. It was known to all that the King had publicly said to my Lord Ambassador that he was in hopes, that by his prudent Conduct he would accomplish that great work which was so far advanced. We earnestly begg'd of God in our prayers, and from our first coming on Board, our Father Superior had ordered every one of us to say a Mafi weekly for their intention.

So soon as we were come to an Anchor, the Ambassador dispatched the Cavaller de Fonkin and Muster Vaches with the news of his arrival to the King of Siam and his Ministers. The first was to go no higher than Bacek, which is the first place of the Kingdom upon the River, ten Leagues from the mouth of it, and the other was to take a Bulle, which is a Boat of that Countrie very light,
A Voyage to Siam.

Book III.

The Governor of Bombay, on the 7th of October, informed the Governor of Siam that he was about to depart for England. He was accompanied by the Governor of Ceylon, who was on his way to join the Governor of Siam. The Governor of Bombay, who was in the habit of meeting the Governor of Siam at every port, was present at the departure of the Governor of Siam.

The Governor of Bombay, who was in the habit of meeting the Governor of Siam at every port, was present at the departure of the Governor of Siam. He was accompanied by the Governor of Ceylon, who was on his way to join the Governor of Siam. The Governor of Bombay, who was in the habit of meeting the Governor of Siam at every port, was present at the departure of the Governor of Siam.

The Governor of Bombay, who was in the habit of meeting the Governor of Siam at every port, was present at the departure of the Governor of Siam. He was accompanied by the Governor of Ceylon, who was on his way to join the Governor of Siam. The Governor of Bombay, who was in the habit of meeting the Governor of Siam at every port, was present at the departure of the Governor of Siam.

The Governor of Bombay, who was in the habit of meeting the Governor of Siam at every port, was present at the departure of the Governor of Siam. He was accompanied by the Governor of Ceylon, who was on his way to join the Governor of Siam. The Governor of Bombay, who was in the habit of meeting the Governor of Siam at every port, was present at the departure of the Governor of Siam.

The Governor of Bombay, who was in the habit of meeting the Governor of Siam at every port, was present at the departure of the Governor of Siam. He was accompanied by the Governor of Ceylon, who was on his way to join the Governor of Siam. The Governor of Bombay, who was in the habit of meeting the Governor of Siam at every port, was present at the departure of the Governor of Siam.

The Governor of Bombay, who was in the habit of meeting the Governor of Siam at every port, was present at the departure of the Governor of Siam. He was accompanied by the Governor of Ceylon, who was on his way to join the Governor of Siam. The Governor of Bombay, who was in the habit of meeting the Governor of Siam at every port, was present at the departure of the Governor of Siam.

The Governor of Bombay, who was in the habit of meeting the Governor of Siam at every port, was present at the departure of the Governor of Siam. He was accompanied by the Governor of Ceylon, who was on his way to join the Governor of Siam. The Governor of Bombay, who was in the habit of meeting the Governor of Siam at every port, was present at the departure of the Governor of Siam.

The Governor of Bombay, who was in the habit of meeting the Governor of Siam at every port, was present at the departure of the Governor of Siam. He was accompanied by the Governor of Ceylon, who was on his way to join the Governor of Siam. The Governor of Bombay, who was in the habit of meeting the Governor of Siam at every port, was present at the departure of the Governor of Siam.

The Governor of Bombay, who was in the habit of meeting the Governor of Siam at every port, was present at the departure of the Governor of Siam. He was accompanied by the Governor of Ceylon, who was on his way to join the Governor of Siam. The Governor of Bombay, who was in the habit of meeting the Governor of Siam at every port, was present at the departure of the Governor of Siam.
Book III.

A Voyage to Siam.

with a shining eye, most mildly said unto him;
Return, Return from whence you came! These words so wrought upon him, that it was impossible for him to keep all the rest of the night, and his thoughts were wholly taken up about finding a way to return to Siam.

Next day while he walked by the Sea side, musing upon what he had seen in the night before, and uncertain what to think of it, he saw a Man coming towards him dripping wet with a sad and dejected countenance. It was an Ambassador of the King of Siam, who upon his return fromPersia had been cast away, without saving anything but his life. Since both of them spoke Siam, they soon acquainted one another with their adventures. The Ambassador discovered himself, and told what extreme necessity he was reduced to.

The Lord Conclave condoling his misfortune, offered to carry him back to Siam: and with the two thousand Crowns that he had saved after his Shipwreck, he bought a small Barque, cloths for himself and the Ambassador, and Victuals for their Passage. This so obliging a Conduct charmed the Ambassador of Siam, who from that time forward called about every way how he might testify to him his gratitude.

When they arrived at Siam, and that the Ambassador had given an account of his Negotiation and Shipwreck to Bacons, who is the first Minister of State in the Kingdom, he told him all the good Offices which he had received from Monsieur Conclave, with so great applause to his merits, that the Minister had a mind to know him. He entertained him in his House, liked him, and resolved to keep him about him; where he soon gained the esteem and confidence of his Master. This Bacons was a witty Man, and well versed in business, but he avoided trouble as much as he could and loved his pleasantries. It ruffled him that he had found an able, faithful and industrious Person on whom he might repose the cares of his place. Nay he often spoke of him to the King; but that which contributed most to begat a good Opinion of him in the mind of that Prince, was the occasion that I am about to relate.

The King of Siam had a design to send an Ambassador into a Foreign Kingdom; and seeing he loves Magnificence and Grandeur, he was willing to spare no cost that he might render it famous by rich and splendid Presents. The Moor to whom he usually addressed himself on such occasions, demanded of him prodigious sums of Money to set out that Embarcation in the manner he desired it should be. The Barbados, to whom the King complained of it, told it to the Lord Conclave, who promised him, that if the King would honour him with that Commission, he would make much finer Presents, and at less Charges than what the King offered the Moor. The King being informed of this, sent for him; and chargèd him with his Orders. He obeyed them with so much exactness and good sense, that from that time his Majesty conceived a great esteem of his ability. The Moor, in the meantime, taking it ill that they had not the sums which they demanded given them, prepared a Petition to the King, praying him to order them payment of the Money which his Majesty owed them. In that Petition they had given a particular account of what they had received, and what they had laid out.
out. So that according to their account he stood indebted to them in a great lump, which, as they said, they wanted. The King would hereupon know the opinion of the Lord Commissioners, and put the memoirs of the Muses into his hand, so soon as he had examined it, he told the King, that he was cheated, and that his Majesty was so far from owing them any thing, that they stood indebted to him in three thousand crowns. The Muses' Captain was then to acknowledge it before the Commissioners, whom the King despatched to enquire into the business, that they had been mistaken in their accounts.

The Baron, dying not long after, the King would needs put Manteur Conynge in his place. He declined it, and made answer to his Majesty, that that post would raise him the envy of all the great Men, that he most humbly besought him not to raise him higher than he was, for that was all his Ambition, being happy enough in that he stood fair in his Favour. His modesty, his skill in affairs and diligence in dispatching them, his Fidelity in managing the publick Revenue, and his steadiness and abilities in refuting both the appointments of his Office, and all pretences from private people, have more and more increased the King's confidence in him. At present everything passes through his hands, and there is nothing done without him. However his greatness hath not at all changed him, he is easy to be spoken with, mild and affable to all People, always ready to listen to the poor, and to do justice to the meanest of the Kingdom. He is the refuge of the wretched and afflicted; but the great Men and Officers who do not do their Duty, think him severe and morose.

Seeing he left his own Country when he was young, and by consequence but little instructed in the Catholic Religion, wherein he was bred, it was no hard matter for the English to make him embrace the Protestant Religion, which seemed to him to differ little from his own. But having had three some Conferences with Father Thomas and Father Mabun, of our Company, for whom he still retains a kind Friendship, and being convinced in his own Judgment of the bad way he had been put into, after full instruction he left it, and abjured his Heretic to Father Thomas. Since that time, he hath led a very regular and edifying Life, and by his Example and Credit contributes much to the establishment of the Catholic Faith, as will appear by the sequel of this History.

So soon as the King of Siam was informed by his Minister of the Honour the King of France did him, by the splendid Embassy he sent to him, and was told that the Ambassador was arrived at the Mouth of the River, he was over-joyed, and publicly expressed it to all his Court. He called his Council, and ordered, upon pain of his displeasure, that care should be immediately taken to receive the Ambassador well; that they should show him all the Honour that he who represented the person of a great Prince deferred, and that they should not stand upon the Ceremonies and Customs that were observed in the reception of other Ambassadors.

At the same time he named two of the chief Lords of his Court, the one, first Gentleman of his Bed-Chamber, and the other chief Captain of his Guards, to go as far as the Bar, to congre-
late in his Name his happy Arrival, and to tell him that he impatiently expected the Day of his Audience and Reception. Some hours after, the Lord of Siam sent one of his Secretaries to comple-
ment his Excellence, and to present him with all sorts of Refreshments for himself, his Retinue, and both his Ships Companies. The Governor of Bangkok had already done the like before; so that in a trice we had plenty of all things.

Since it was his Maitreys intention, That the Ambassador should have an extraordinary Reception, the Lord of Siam contributed on his part alfo, to do him the Honour that no body before him had ever received there; not only that he might perform his Master Orders, but alfo that he might tillifie the profound respect which he had always entertained for the King of France. He went in person to the Town of Siam, to pitch upon the Lodgings where my Lord Ambassador was to be accommodated; and by his Orders, diverse Apartments were built hard by for lodging his Gentlemen and all his Retinue. He caused the Bateau of State to be made ready, which were to bring the Ambassador and hisfb, which were to follow him; because in the Month of September, as it was then, the River of Siam is much out, and all the Countrie about overflow'd. He gave Orders that at every five Leagues distance, near Houses should be forthwith built on the River side, and very sumptuously furnished; and that as far as Tedompe, an hours journey from Siam, where my Lord Ambassador was to stay, till all things were ready for his Reception.

In the mean time, the Bishop of Metropolis, Urbanus, Vicar Apostolic of a great part of the Indies, came on board, and the Abbot of Loms with him. They were received with all the Marks of Esteem and Respect, that were due to the Dignity of the one, and the Quality of the other. The Ambassador and Bishop after Mats that up themselves together, and had a long Conference upon the Subject of the Embassage.

Though we had had the Honour to kiss the Bishop's Hands when he came on board, yet our Father Superior judged it convenient, that we should again all fix together go and pay our most humble Respects to him. This Prelate, who is a person of a very sweet and good Nature, received us with all testimonies of Joy and Affection; Nay he offered us his Seminary to live in so long as we should be at Siam; telling us, that the House of the Company was too small to accommodate us all. And we rendered him our hearty Thanks for his Goodness.

At that time the two great Mandarin whom the King of Siam sent to his Excellence, came on board of us in a Galley. They were introduced into the Embassadors Cabin, that was furnished with a Four-Carpet; Being come in, they sat down upon the Carpet; and then the Elder of the two asked my Lord Ambassador in the Name of the King his Master, News of the King of France, and of all the Royal Family, and congratulated his Happy Arrival. He added, according to the Visions of the Metempsychosis, where with most of the Orientals are infatuated, that he well knew his Excellence had heretofore been employed in great Affairs, and that it was above a thousand years since he came to Siam to renew the Friendship of the Kings who at that time governed the two.
A Voyage to Siam.

Book III.

two Kingdoms of France and Siam. The Ambassador having very civilly answered their Complements, added with a Smile, that he did not remember he had ever been charged with so important a Negotiation, and that this was the first Voyage he had ever made to Siam. After a short Stay they took leave, affording the Ambassador, that the King was impatient to see him; and that he had ordered the last day of the Year to be pitched upon for his Reception. They were served with Tea and Sweet Meats; and one of them, who was a very handson man, and of a pleasant Speech, drank Wine; but the other would not so much as taste it. So they went into their Galley again, where they wore down all they had seen and heard in this Congress.

Towards the Evening our Father Superior would have me go before with Father Videlin and Father Bresee, to take order about our Affairs. There offered a very fair occasion by the return of the Bishop and Abbot of Lome, who were to part next day; and who offered us their Balaus. The Ambassador commanded the Chancelier de Foreville and the Chancelier du Roy to wait upon the Bishop and Abbot, who went into the Cha-loop; where we had the honour to accompany them, because their Balaus were not strong enough to come on board.

Pretty late in the Evening we got to the mouth of the River at that place it is but a short League over a tall a League further up, it is not a quarter of a League over; and a little higher it is not at the broadest place above an hundred and three-fourths of three-quarters over. It has a very fair pretty deep Channel. The Bar is a Bank of 

Ouze lying in the mouth of it, where there is not above thirteen foot water when the Tides are at the highest. There is nothing more charming than the sight of that River, the Banks on both sides being covered over with Trees always green, and beyond them there being nothing but vast Plains reaching out of sight covered with Rice. It was Night when we put up at a little Lodging where the Balaus of the Bishop of Montpellier stay for him. Seeing the Countryside within a day's Journey of Siam, is very low Land; it is all overgrown for one half of the Year. The Rains which fall for several Months together flooding the River, cause these great Inundations, and that's the thing which makes the Countryside so fruitful; were it not for that the Rice that grows only in Water, and wherewith all the Fields are covered, could not supply, as it does, all the Smance and neighbouring Countries with Food. This is another Convenience of these Inundations, that one may go all about in a Balaus, even into the Fields; which makes the number of Boats to be in all places, that in the greatest part of the Kingdom there are more Balaus than Men. There are some of them very big, covered with Housfs, which serve to lodge whole Families, and several of these being joined together, make a kind of Boating Villages in those places where they chance to meet.

We continued going up the River all night long, during which we saw a very pleasant Light; and that was an infinite number of Fire-thins, wherewith all the Trees upon the sides of the River were so covered over, that they appeared like so many great Branches for thick with immovable
A Voyage to Siam. Book III.

The Lights, which the reflection of the Water, at that time as smooth as a Looking-glass, infinitely multiplied. Whilst we were taken up in viewing them, all of a sudden we were becalmed with a prodigious quantity of Muskeetoe or Moringias. There are a kind of very troublesome Gnats, that fly through Peoples Cloaths, and leave the Marks of it a long time behind them. The Saracen, who rowd our Batte, thought they were nocks, and twas'd at the Oar, made a better shift against them than we; they gave themselves a flap with the hand every time they felt a Musketoe, and struck so fast that they never missed them, without losing one single Strain of their Oar for all that.

We found a great many Monkeys and Sapiens upon the River side, which cluttered up the Trees, and went together in Troops. But no pleasanter sight can be seen than the vast numbers of Crest Herons that swarm upon the Trees; at a distance one would take them for their Bloods. The White of the Birds mingling with the Green of the Trees, makes the most lovely Landscape imaginable. The Crest Heron is a Fowl shaped like a common Heron, but far less; it is of a near proportion of Body, and has fair Feathers whiter than snow. It has Tops or Tufts upon the Head, Bick and Belly, wherein its chief Beauty consists, and which render it extraordinary.

All the wild Birds have most lovely Feathers, and with several colors, all yellow, all red, all bluish, all green, and that in great numbers: For the Saracen believing the Transmigration of Souls into other Bodies, kills no Animals.

We did not make a League of War without meeting with some Pagod, that is to say, a Temple of Gods. It hath always by it a little Monastery of Tegapans, who are the Priests and the Religious of the Country. These Tegapans live in common, and their Houses are so many Seminaries, where the Children of Quality are bred.

So long as Children continue there, they wear the habit of Tegapanus, which consists in two pieces of a kind of yellow Cotton Cloth, whereas the one ferries to cover them from the Girdle down to the Knees, and the other, they use sometimes as a Scarf, putting it about their Shoulders like a Shoulder-Belt; and sometimes they wrap it about them like a little Cloak. They have their Heads and Eye-brow's shaved as well as their Musters, who are perfumed that it would be foundod and sinful to ket hem grow: Their Blindness made us earnestly pity them.

Having row'd all night long, about Ten of the Clock in the Morning we arrived at Rassak. This is the most important Place of the Kingdom, because it defends the Passage of the River with a Fort that is on the other side. Both are well fortified with Bratt Guns, but ill fortified. Monsieur de la Mare a French Engineer, whom my Lord Ambassador left at Siam, hath received Orders from the King to fortify it regularly, and to make a good place of it. We saw the Governor of it in pating, he is a tall and handsom man, who received us with a great deal of Civility.

We
A Voyage to Siam. Book III.

We went afterwards to dine with a French Artist; for there are no Inns in that Country. That day we began to use Rice instead of Bread, and to drink nothing but River-water. The Rice being only boiled with Water, is but an indifferent kind of Food, and we could hardly acustom our Elfe to it at first, but within a Fortnight or two we came to like it as well as Bread, which is very scarce and dear there, because the Wheat must be brought from Sumatra or Jafan.

Beware Round and Siam, you meet with a great many Villages, that almost every where border the River. These Villages are no more than a great many Huts or Houses raised upon high Pillars, because of the Inundations. They are made of Bamboo, which is a Tree whose Timber is much used in that Country. The Trunks and great Branches serve for making of Pillars and Joyners, and the small Branches to make the Walls and Roofs. Next the Villages are the Bazaars or Boating Market-places, where the Siamese, who go up or down the River, find their Victuals ready dress’d; that’s to say, Fruit, boy’d Rice, Rusk (which is a kind of Strong Water made of Rice and Lime) and some Raisins after the Siamese Mode, which a Frenchman could not taste.

Next day, the Third of October, we came to Siam. We thought the Bishop of Metz, who had got before us, and therefore went before our Precentor, to pay him our dutiful Respect at home; but he was not as yet arrived. Whilst we stayed for him, we said Mass, to give God thanks for his Protection during all our Voyage, which had been exactly seven Months long; for we

we set out from Budi the Third of March, and arrived at Siam the Third of October.

From thence we went to the House of Father Santier, the only Jesuit that was then at Siam; Father Melchior being gone for some time before to Malta, from whence he was to return towards March following. We pass’d by the French Factory, and there talked with the Officers of the Company. Then we were conduct’d to the Palace which was preparing for my Lord Ambassador; where we met with the Lord Cowley, the first, or to say better, the only Minister of the Kingdom. We knew before that he was a man of great Merit, and had a kindness for us; but we had the experience of both far beyond our expectations. In that short Interview, he gave us many Testimonies of Goodness, and thanked him for the Bacon which he sent to meet us, and for the Chambers that he was pleased to order to be built for us near to Father Santier, whose House was too little to accommodate us with Lodgings. He told us that it was pleasure to him to oblige us, and that he did it but his Duty, when he built an Apartment for his Brethren (for so he did us the honour to call us,) so that he could not lodge us in his own House, that moreover he expected more Jesuits, whom he had demand’d from the Father General at least a year ago. Then he shewed us all the Apartments of the Ambassador’s Palace, which we thought very handsome and neat.

The King of Siam had ordered a lovely House to be built for the Ambassador; but it not as yet finished, and that there was no delay to be made because of the Season that preceded his
A Voyage to Siam.

Return, Messr. Conourse went himself and pitched upon the fairest and most commodious House of the Town, which belonged to a great Mandarin, a Perion by Nation, and had it splendidly furnished.

In the first Story there were two Halls of a Floor, hung with very lovely fine painted Cloth. The first was furnished with Chairs with blew Velvet, and the other with Chairs of red Velve and Gold Fringes; and the Ambassador's Chamber was encompassed with a Japan Screen, of singular Beauty; but the Dress seemed to us to be the prettiest of all. It was a great feled Hall, Separated from the other Apartments by a large Court, and built for taking the fresh Air during the Plague. There was a Wager-work at the entry, a half pace within, with a very rich Canopy of State and armed Chair, and in the Obscurer Retreat two Closets joyning the River, which served for bathing places. Which way ever one cast his Eyes, there was nothing to be seen but fine Cloths of all sizes, placed in niches; and in a word, every thing both cool and pleasant.

Having stayed some time there, we took our leave of the Lord Conourse, and returned home; where we found Father Swarog praying for us. He received us with extraordinary expressions of joy, and treated us in the best manner his Poverty could allow. He is a Burgoyne Jesuit three-score and ten years old, and hath lived above thirty years in the Palace, where, by his Zeal and Capacity, he hath gained the Esteem and Friendship of all that knew him. He was eager to undertake the Lodgings, that the Lord Conourse ordered to be prepared for us. They were building for us upon Ploies in the River, fix little Rooms to lodge us in, and a Gallery where we might lay our Instruments; there were near a hundred Workmen employed about it, who had two Mandarins to oversee them and keep them to their Business by day and night. Without that Augmentation Father Swarog could not have accommodated us at his House; he had but one Chamber and a Closet, both to be very poor and to ill that, that the Wood-frises, which are a kind of very venomous Lizards, were in all places, behind his Trunks and amongst his Furniture.

Whilest these things were thus a preparing, the King sent two dignified Lords of his Court, with ten Mandarin of the fourth and fifth Rank, each with a Bailie of State to wait upon the Ambassador to the Mouth of the River. It was very magnificent, all over gilt, three-score and twelve foot long; and roved by several hundred men, with Oars covered with Plates of Silver. The Cloths, which is a kind of little Dome, placed in the middle, was covered with Scarlet, and lined with phante Cloth of Gold, having Curtains of the same Stuff. The Bailies were of Ivory, the Cushions of Velvet, and a Persian Carpet was laced under foot. This Bailie was accompanied with sixteen more, four of which, adorned also with Foot-Carpets, and Scarlet Covers, were for the Gentlemen of the Ambassador’s Retinue, and the other twelve for the rest of his Attendants. The Governor of Ranae paid them with the chief Mandarin of the Neighbourhood, so that they made about fifty fix Bailies when they came to the Mouth of the
the River. These Boats are of an extraordinary shape, they are very long and narrow; some of them are as long as Galleys, that is to say, an hundred or fixtogeet in length, which at the broadest place are not fixt feet wide. Their Crew consists of an hundred, fixtogeet, and sometimes an hundred and thirty Rowers.

The Deputies paid a Galleys at the Mouth of the River, which was to carry them on Board; it was attended by three others, and fix Tarans, which are long Barks for carrying the Baggage. Being come to the Ambassador’s Ships, they complemented him in the Name of the Kings, telling him, that they had Orders from his Majesty, to wait upon his Excellence to the City, where the King impatiently expected him, that he might have certain News of the King of France his good Friend, and of all the Royal Family.
A VOYAGE TO SIAM.
The Fourth Book.
The Voyage from the Bar of Siam, to the Cities of Siam and Louvo.

On the 8th, my Lord Ambassador, being acquainted that Kings Baluns were to come and receive him and all his Retinue, that day, went into his Chaloon with a noise of Trumpers, and was saluted by his own Ship with fifteen Guns. He arrived in good time at the mouth of the River, whither the Kings Baluns came. He went into that which was appointed for him with the Bishop of Metropolis, and was followed by all the rest. That day they advanced but two Leagues from the mouth...
of the River, and the Baloons drawing up round the Morro, which was got up for its, all lay that night in their Batioo.

Next day they went to Prepuan, where the first sitting Palace was prepared. Though these little Buildings be run up in a week or two, and made only of Reeds and Mats, yet they are commodious and pleasant. Since this was the first, and that all the rest were of the same nature, it is not I should give a description of it.

Coming out of the Baloon, we mounted a pair of Stairs of six or seven Steps, that reached down to the Water, and led into a kind of Platform, where after ten or twelve Steps you find two pretty large Halls, one on the right hand and the other on the left, which serve the Ambas
datoons Servants for Kitchen, Lodging and all. Beyond these there were two Rooms on one side the Ambassadors’ Chamber, and on the other a Chapel. The Corridor or Platform bordered upon a Hall which the Portuguese call Sala de profapiro; on the right of you entered it, there was a half pace covered with a Patten Carpet, a large Caso
cy of State of a Stuff made of Gold and Silk, with a gilt Chair underneath and Garni
on Velvet Cushions with Gold galloon. Over against it there was a Cupboard covered with a Carpet of lovely China-work Cloth of Gold, and in the middle of the Hall a long Table for three
some persons. All these Apartments were neatly furnished, and the halls are exquisite in that Country, they were hung only with very fine Indian Tapestry and the Floors were covered with extraordinary fine Mats. The Floor of the Ambas
datoons’ Chamber was covered with a large Patten

Book IV. A Voyage to Siam.

Perian Carpet, and the rising with a very rich Stuff.

In all these Palaces of which there were seven Officers of the Kings household, of whom the first were Gentlemen of the Kings bed-chamber, and the seventh, Captain of the Life-guards with some Soldiers who kept Guard day and night, and went several Rounds about the House to prevent noise and disorder. The first six and those whom they commanded, took care that nothing was wanting to the Magnificence of the Table and Neatness of the Apartments.

As soon as the Ambassadors first ashore at Prepuan, he was complimented by the Governor of Bencok and Pipo, who had waited for him there, since the day before. After Dinner he Embarked again, with the same Court and Attendance and went to Bencok. Half a League from the Town two Gross Mandarins of the third Order, of whom the last was, as it were, General of the Guards, came in the Kings name to receive him, and to wait upon him to the Capital City. It was five a Clock before he arrived at Bencok. An English Ship lying at Anchor under the Fort, blamed his Excellence with One and Twenty Gun, and the Town that was over against it, with One and Thirty. As he went a
floor, he was received by a great number of Mandarins drawn up in two ranks, having the Governor of Bencok and Pipo at the head of them, and he was conducted to the Lodging that had been pre
pared for him in the Town. The streets through which his palfreys were armed with Arolo which is a very precious wood, and of a rare smell. So soon as he was come into his Palace, the Fort which
which had not as yet saluted him, discharged all its Artillery. Next morning after Breakfast his Excellence was conducted back to his Bawm with the same Ceremonies. As he put off, the Fort which was on the same side, saluted him with One and Twenty Guns, the other Fort fired Twenty Nine; and the English Ships Twenty One, and it was the Lord Conferences Recommendation that made the Ship fired that civility to the Lord Ambassador.

The same Honours were performed to him in all places where he went afores, and the King daily sent Mandarins of the chiefest quality to salute him on his part, who being all ordered to stay with him till he came to a place called the Tahong, his Court and Attendance was thereby render'd very numerous. A quarter of League from thence, he found the Presidents of all the Nations that are at Siam. The English came with Eight Barges, and then the Chinese and Mores. When the Nations had made severally their Complements, they all together waited upon him to his Lodging, and then took leave. The Governors of places who had received him at the entry into their Governments, waited upon him also so far. It is an Extraordinary honour, and had never before been render'd to any Ambassador.

It was the King of Siam's pleasure, that the Ambassador of the King of France, should be treat'd with marks of distinction from all others, and even from those of the Emperor of China, who all over the East is reckoned the greatest Monarch of the Universe.
A Voyage to Siam. Book IV.

Before he receives Audience, he ought to send the Prefects and Letter to the Minifter, who having fully examined them in Council, ouf them to be laid upon a Table betwixt the King and the Ambassador. Betwixt that Table and the Ambassador, there is still a Mandarin to receive the King’s Orders, when it pleafes his Majesty to fend the Letter, which at the end of the Audience he prefents to the Ambassador.

At the Court of Siam there are Mandarins appointed to take care of the Affairs of the several Nations. To these private Men apply themselves to have their Petitions prefented to the King, and to obtain Audience of him. They wait upon the Ambaffadors of the Kingdoms, whose Affairs concern their Province, and therefore are called Mandarin of the Nation or Captains of the Port.

In public Affairs these Mandarin are betwixt the Ambassador and chief Minifter, to carry the word from the one to the other. The King speaks drift, and bid his Minifter ask the Ambaffador how long it is since he parted from the King his Father; if he and all the Royal Family were in health when he left them; the Ambaffador makes what Answer he has to give by his Interpreter, not immediately to the King, but to the Captain of his Nation, and this man repeats it to the Barcaron, who tells it to the King. He is then questioned in the fame manner as to the chief points of his Ambaffador, and fo soon as he hath made his Answer, they bring him Beif and a Veil by the King’s Orders, who therupon immediately retires without any other Ceremony, but the loud Trumpets and other Instruments, in the fame manner as he entered.

For the Ambaffadors of Independent Kings, as of the King of Peru, the Great Mogul, of the Emperors of China and Japan, he ufed them in this manner. The great Mandarin of the firft and fecond Order, lye prostrate in a Lane according to their Rank, at the foot of the Kings Throne, and the other Mandarin are prostrate in the two bow Halls on the Sides which we have mentioned already. The Ambaffador is to come with his Interpreter to a place affigned him near the Palace, where he fays tell the chief Maffer of the Ceremonies, comes and introduces him to his Audience.

As he enters the Palace, he flies down upon the ground, and lays his hands upon his head, which is a mark of the profound reftarct he pays to his Majesty. Then he rises again, and advances between the two Halls, where the Mandarin of the third, fourth and fifth Order, lye prostrate with great silence; when he comes to the foot of the Stairs that lead into the Hall of Audience, he kneels, crawling along upon his hands until he come into the Hall, and in that posture appears before the King, who is upon his Throne raifed ten or twelve foot high, upon a very broad half pace, where the great Mandarin lye prostrate. He flaps at the side of the half pace, above thirty feet from the Throne. In the space behind, there is a Table carrying a great golden Basin, where the Prefents which he hath brought are, and the Letter of the King his Father open, having been already read by the Barcaron. When he is come to his place, he continues there without rising up. The chief Minifter’s Lieutenant takes the Princes Letter that is upon the Table, and reads it.
A Voyage to Siam.  

Book IV

It is said to the King. When the Letter is read, his Majesty asks the Ambassador News of the King his Master Health, and of all the Royal Family. The King speaks to the Barcelon, the Barcelon repeats it to the Captain of the Nation, and the Captain to the Interpreter, who explains it to the Ambassador. He again makes answer to his Interpreter, and from him it passes through the same hands to the King. In short, his Majesty having in this manner put some Questions, and heard the Answers, orders to be presented to the Ambassador, and to withdraws with sound of Trumpet.

The Circumstances of Chaumont being informed of these ways of receiving Ambassadors below the Character which he bore, sent for the chief Mandarin, who accompanied him by Order from the King their Master, and told them that he would be glad the King of Siam would name some Lord of his Court to adjudge the Ceremonies of his Entry and Audience, that in nothing might pass but what suited the Grandeur and Friendship of both Kings. The Mandarin made Answer to his Excellence, that they should acquaint the Barcelon, who would have the Honour to speak of it to his Majesty. They waited not to do it, and the King immediately named the Lord Constance, with Orders to go at once to the Ambassador, and concert with him the Manner how he was to be received in the capital City and Palace. His Majesty had already said publicly, that he would not have the ancient Ceremonies observed as to him, which were used at the Reception of the Ambassadors of the Mogul, Peruf, and China, and that he continued that the Ambassador of France should enter his Palace.

Book VI.  

A Voyage to Siam.

Palace with a Sword by his side, and that he should sit at his Audience, which had never been before granted to any Ambassador.

The Lord Constance thought himself much honoured by that Commission, and came to wait on his Excellence. After their usual Compliments M. de Chaumont spoke of the King's Convention as the chief Subject of his Embassage. The Lord Constance seemed astonished at it, and told the Ambassador, that it was the thing in the World which he most desired, but that there was no appearance of effecting it; that the King was extremely addicted to the Religion of his Ancestors, and that he would be strangely startled at an Overture for which he was not at all prepared; that he adjured the Ambassador not to speak of that Affair, which without doubt, would cause Disorder in the present Junctures, and could produce no Good. The Ambassador made answer, that he would consider of it, but that he could hardly suppos the most considerable, and almost Sole Reason of his Voyage.

Then they treated about the manner how the Ambassador's Gentlemen should be present at the Audience, for they would have had them either not to come at all, or that they should be in a posture of profound Humility.

My Lord Ambassador was positive they should enter with him into the Hall of Audience, and stay there as long as he did. It was to no purpose for the Lord Constance to tell him that it was a new thing, and never practised at the Court of Siam, and that the King would hardly condescend to that; that the Ambassadors of the Kings of Thailand and Cochinchine themselves came only
only creeping to the Hall-Flairs, and appeared prostrate before the King. My Lord Ambassador stood his ground, adding, that he could not go to Audience but upon that Condition: that no Compromises should be made in the King's Presence; that they should enter the Hall before his Majesty appeared there, and that they should be sitting upon the Carpet when he should appear upon his Throne. The Minister thought their Proposals reasonable; but seeing he knew how nice the King would be upon that Point, he prayed the Ambassador to give him time to speak of it to his Majesty; whereupon, after a long Conference they parted full of Efficacy and Friendship for one another. The Lord Conflans managed that Affairs so well, that the King granted the Ambassador all that he desired; and so there was no more now to be done, but to complete the Preparatives of the Entry.

Two days after, all the Eastern Nations that live at Siam, would needs shew the high Ecclesiastical which they had conceived of the King of France. About three and forty of different Countries of the Indies, joined together to make their Ceremonies more splendid, and came in a vast number of Balsams, variously decked to complement the Ambassador. Next day, four great Balsams of State came by Orders from the Lord Conflans, each manned with supplementary Rovers, and we had never seen the like. The two first were shaped like Sea-Fortresses, they were all over gilt, and to see them coming at a distance upon the River, one would have taken them to be alive. Two Officers of the King's Guards were in them, to receive the Prefects of the King of France. So soon as they were landed, they put out with great silence, and took their Station in the middle of the Channel. All the while that they lay there, there was not the least Noise to be heard upon the Shores, and no Balois was then suffered to come up or down the River, lest they might fall in the Respect that is due to the Balois of State, and to the Prefects they carried.

The Day before that which was appointed for the Ambassadors Entry into the City of Siam, and for his first Audience, the King sent two Princes of his Court to attend him next day: The first was called Ota Prisseld, and the other Pope Jepl de Cin. This last was Count'l-german to the King of Cambodia, and Ota Prisseld was the Chief and Protector of all the Telegrams of the Kingdom, having power to Judge, and Sentence them to be punished when they defied it, which is one of the Chief and most Important Offices of the State.

They brought with them thirteen Balam of State, with other fix for the Guards, and they were followed by forty Mandarins of the third, fourth, and fifth Order, all in their Balois of Ceremony, appointed to wait upon that which was to carry the Ambassador, and was one of the most magnificent that belonged to the King. They began to set out upon the River about eight of the Clock in the Morning. The Balois of the Mandarins of inferior Qualities, to the number of forty, went first by Pairs, and keeping a due distance from one another. After them came ten or twelve Mandarins of the second and third Rank, who had come all the way from Bantam, and the last
were followed by the two Princes, whom the King had sent the Evening before. After a competent interval appeared the four Balins, whereunto they had put the Kings Presents, and then that which carried his Letter separated from all the rest by a considerable Space; for before the Ambassador parted from the Tukasse, it behoved him to conform to the Custom of these People, to take the Kings Letter with great Respect, and put it into the Hands of the Abbé du Chêf, who was to convey it to the Balin solely appointed for it. My Lord Ambassador came next, in a magnificent Balin, all shining and covered over with Gold. On his Right and Left-hand he had six Gallies of the Guards, in which were the Trumpets, Drums, and other Instruments that go before the King when he goes abroad publickly. He was followed by four of the Kings Balins, where his Gentlemen and Servants were; after them came so vast and confin’d a number of great and small Balins of all the Nations, that they covered the Miwaan, which is the Name of the River, and in the Siam Language, signifies the Mother of Waters. That long Train of Balins of State which advanced in good order to the number of an hundred and fifty, and a Crowd of others covered over all the River as far as ones Sight could reach, and made a pleasant Show. The Shore that the Water-men make according to the Custom of the Siamese, as if they had been going to charge an Enemy, brought Crowds of People to both sides of the River to be Spectators of that august Ceremony.

None but the Portuguese absented themselves, except three or four who are Officers in the King of Siam’s Forces. By that they pretended to be even with the French, who two years before had been affixed at the Entry of the Ambassador of Portugal. Only Father Shaw for all his great Age and Infirmities came and paid his Respects to my Lord Ambassador. This good old Man expressed his Joy by all the Means he could, and made his Bells to ring when the Ambassador put by our Church.

The Dutch Factory which is on the other side of the River, and one of their Ships riding at Anchor hard by saluted the Ambassador with all their Guns. The City of Siam did the same, when he put by the said Balin, and the French Company made their Ship, which was Giles at Prow and Streamers, fire all its Guns twice when the Ambassador put by it, going and coming from his Audience.

Having consulted along part of the Town Walls, the Lord Ambassador came to the Landing-place, which was a quarter of a League from the Palace. The Lord Ambassador, after he had sent for the Prince of Angkorn, he sent for the Prince of Angkorn, and sent for the Prince of Angkorn, and so soon as he had intelligence that the Balin drew near, he mounted his Elephant, and put himself at the Head of twenty Elephants of War, who were drawn up on the River side. When my Lord Ambassador landed he alighted from off his Elephant, and having made a deep Bow to the Balin that carried the Kings Letter, he advanced to meet his Excellence, with whom he exchanged many Ceremonies. My Lord Ambassador sent afterward to take the Kings Letter out of the Balin where it was put, but he found that the Merchants had already brought it aboard with the gilt Pyramid where-
A Voyage to Siam. Book IV.

The Recept shean to the King's Letter.

The Ambassador is carried to the Palace.

wherin it was. This poor Mandarin committed a great fault, when he thought that he did very well; he was punished for it upon the Spot, and had his Head prick'd, as an Earrish of a Severe Condemn. For in Embassies of the East, there is another Respect flown to the Letters which Princes send, than to their Ambassadors. The Letter they look upon as the Royal Word, whereas the Ambassador is no more but the Carrier. The Ambassador then took the Letter and gave it to the Abbot of Clowis, who were with great Reverence and laid it upon a gilt Chariot, which was so carried it enclosed within a high Pyramid to the Palace Gate.

After that Ceremony was over, the Ambassador fared down in a great gilt Chair, railed upon a half Pace covered with a rich Velvet Carpet. In that manner he was carried upon ten Mens Shoulders, environed with Mandarins, who walked a-foot, except two who were carried by his Sides upon lower Chairs. The Abbot de Clowis followed him, carried in a Chair painted Red, and adorn'd with Ivory, and the Gentlemen rode upon Horses that were prepared for them. This March was somewhat singular, it began by twenty Elephants of War that filed off first amid the double Lane of Piles and Muffles drawn up along a great Street, that reached from the Waters-side to the Palace; next came the Guards and Officers of the Governor of the Town, and many Mandarins in Horseback. The Lord Conscience march'd last upon an Elephant, and went immediately before the Chariot that carried the Kings Letter, to which the People fitting on the Ground, made the Recept of it as it began to appear. After the
of three or four Masts on Horshack; they were armed with Lance and had a very good Men. In the third Court were forty Elephants, with Har- nek richer than the first, and two Regiments of Life Guards that made two thousand Men under their Arms. Upon entering into the fourth Court, which had one half the Pavement covered with Men, we found two hundred Soldiers who wore Sables adorned with Gold and Turf, called by the Parthians Gir Bisne Prowank, because their Arms are painted Red. These Soldiers are the Officers of the Kings Rabon, and as it were, the Guardians of the Channel. In two Halls more forward there were five hundred Parfians of the Kings Guard sitting on the Ground cross-legged, because in the Kings Palace no Man is suffered to be upon his Legs, unless he be going, and all the Snow Soldiers were squared upon the Tail, holding their Arms betwixt their joyned Hands.

The fifth Court into which we entered, was covered with fine Mats, on which lay prostrate all the Mandarin of the third, fourth, and fifth Order, and at a little distance from the second Order were in the same Posture upon Persian Carpets. Having passed among all the Mandarin, and crossed to many Courts, we came at length to the foot of a pair of Stairs, where on the Right-hand were two Elephants covered all over with Gold, and on the Left, fix Persian Horses, part of whose Saddles and Straps were of state Gold, and their Harneks fit with Pearls, Diamonds, Rubies and Emeralds. My Lord Ambassador stood there, and the Gentlemen going up to the Hall of Audience, where the King

was not come as yet, sat down upon Persian Carpets over against the Throne, at twenty Paces distance, as it had been agreed upon. This A Description of the Throne, to speak properly, is no more but a large Window raised seven or eight foot higher than the half Pace, and answering to the middle of the Hall. On the Right and Left-hand were two great Paraffs of Cloth of Gold, consisting of seven or eight Stories, whose Squares were of beaten Gold, and so high that they almost touched the Ceiling. The Bishop of Metropolis, the Abbot of Lyons, and Minifter Parke, sat in the Hall in the same manner as the Gentlemen did near the Seat which was prepared for the Ambas- sador. In that Hall the Prince, Ministers and Mandarins of the first Order lay prostrate, to the Right and Left, according to their Rank and Quality.

There are three sorts of Princes at the Court of Siam; the first are the Princes of the Blood Royal of Cambouis, and other Kingdoms that are Tributary to the King of Siam. The second are the Princes of Laos, China, and Borneo, who have been taken in the Wars, and some others that have voluntarily put themselves under the Kings Protection. The third are those whom the King has raised to the Degree of Princes; every one of them had before them great Caps of Gold and Silver, which are the Badges of their Dignity, and they lay prostrate with profound Silence, expecting the coming of the King. Some- time after all were thus placed, a great Noise of Trumpets, Drums, and many other Instrument was heard, and then the Throne was opened, and the King appeared sitting on it. But he was to be
A Voyage to Siam. Book IV.

be sent only to the Girdle, the rest being hid by the Frost of the Window. All the prostrate Marion rose up upon their knees, and having their Hands joined over their Heads, made profound Inclinations of Body, and knocked their Foreheads against the Ground. The King wore a Stole all shining with precious Stones. It is a long Cap ending in a Point like a Pyramid, encompassed with three Rings of Gold, at some distance from one another. On his Fingers he wore a great many large Diamonds that cast a great Light; his Veit was Red on a Ground of Gold, and over that he had a Gaze of Gold with Buttons of big Diamonds; all his Ornaments, together with a brick Air, Fall of Life, and always frowning, made him look with a great deal of Gracefulness and Majesty.

No sooner was the Ambassador advertised by the Noise of the Instruments that the King was come, but he entered the Hall, followed by the Abbot du Chast and the Lord Connaught. Having advanced four Steps, and looking upon the King, as if that had been the first time he had perceived him; he made a Bow to the Ground, a second he made in the middle of the Hall, and a third when he was come near to the Seat that was prepared for him. The King answered every Bow he made by an Inclination of Body, which he accompanied with a serene and smiling Countenance. Then my Lord Ambassador began his Compliments in this manner, and having uttered the first Words, sat down and put on his Hat.

SIR,

The Ambassador enters the Hall of Audience.

T He King my Masters, at present is famous in the Tha-Hongtong World by his great Victories, and the Peace of the French is held so often given his Enemies as the Head of Ambassadors. His Armies, hath commanded me to wait upon Your of Siam.

He is a person of the particular Pheons he hath conceived for Your Person: He knows, Sir, your Ancient Qualities, the Magnificence of Your Government, the Magnificence of Your Court, the Grandeur of Your Dominions, and what particularly You are willing that He should know by Your Ambassadors, the Difficulties You have for It, confirmed by that constant Provisions which You gave your Subjects, especially the Bishops who are by me, and who are the Ministers of the true God.

He is very sensible of the many Illustrious Efforts of the Pheons You have for Him; and He resolves, Sir, to correspond with it in the usual of the Power. In that Design he is ready to treat with Your Majesty, to send You of the Subjects to entertain and encourage Commerce, to give You all the Testimonies of a sincere Friendship, and to begin betwixt the two Crowns an Union that may remain as strict to Posterity, as Your Territories are separated from His by those vast Seas that divide them. But nothing will more conform Him in this Resolution, nor more make You more easily together, than to live in the Sentiments of the same Belief.

And it is that particularly, Sir, which the King my Masters, a Prince of Wits and Sharp Figures, that He has always given good Counsel to the Kings that are His Allies, hath commanded me to express to You on His Part. He desires You by the Intercess, which as being one of Your most sincere Friends, he sends to You.
A Voyage to Siam.

Book IV.

real Glory, to consider that Sovereign Majesty whereby you are honored upon Earth, cannot be derived from any but the true God, that’s to say, from an Omniscient, Eternal, and Infinite God, such as Christians acknowledge him to be, who alone makes Kings to Reign and Rules the Fortune of all People.

To submit Your Grandeur to the God who governs Heaven and Earth, is much more Rational, Sir, than to refer them to the gods that are worshipped on the Earth, whose Promises, Your Majesty, who hath so much Light and Perspicacity, cannot but easily see.

But it will be made far more palatable to You, Sir, if I’ll be pleased for some time, to give a Visiting to the Bishop and other Missionaries that are here. It will be the welcome News that I can convey to my Majesty, Sir, that Your Majesty being convinced of the Truth, takes pains to be instructed in the Christian Religion. This will grace on Him a greater Esteem and admiration for Your Majesty, and make His Subjects more eager to come into Your Dominions; and in a Word, Sir, will complete Your Glory, seeing by that Means, Your Majesty, leaving to perpetually Reign upon Earth, makes sure of an Eternal Reign in the Heavens.

The Bishop told the Lord Confranc in Portugal the Scale of his Excellencies Complement, and that Munster explained it to the King in Siam, keeping in the mean while in a very respectful Posture, as the other Princes and Lords did, who still continued prostrate in the Hall at his Side, but a little lower. It would be no easy matter to describe the Joy and Gladness which the

Book IV. A Voyage to Siam.

King of Siam expressed on that occasion and during the whole Day.

It was a Surprise to the Ambassador, when he entered the Hall, to see the King so high above him, and he seemed somewhat troubled that he had not been told of it. When his Complement was made, the next thing he was to do in course, was to advance and present the King his Ministers Letter to the King of Siam. It was agreed upon with the Lord Confranc, that to shew greater Respect to the King’s Letter, the Ambassador should take it from the Abbe de Cheval, who for that end should stand by his Side during his Speech, and hold the Letter in a golden Cup with a very long Foot. But the Ambassador, perceiving the King so high above him, that to reach up to him he must have taken the Cup by the lower part of the Foot, and raised his Arm very high, thought that that Disturbance was not with his Dignity, and that he ought to present the Letter nearer hand. Having a little considered, he thought it was his best Course to hold the Cup by the Bowl, and to stretch his Arm but half out. The King perceiving the reason why he acted so, rose up inclining and bowing with his Body over the Throne, met him half way to receive the Letter. He then put it upon his Head which was a Mark of extraordinary Honour and Esteem that he was willing to shew to the great King that knew it. After that he made answer to the Ambassador, that he was extremely obliged to his most Christian Majesty for the Honour he did him, and that he had no greater desire than to entertain an eternal Peace and Amity with his Majesty. He then asked him about that Prince's Health.
A Voyage to Siam. Book IV.

Health, whom he called his good Friend, and about the Health of all the Royal Family, and expressed his Gladness that his Excellence and all his Retinue were arrived in good Health.

The Ambassador having thanked his Majesty for all his Favours, preplied to him the Act of Ceste as a Person of Merit, and the Gentlemen of his Retinue, saying that they were all Officers in the King's Fleet, that most of them had been on several Occasions engaged against the Enemy of the State, and therein signalized their Valor. The King listened to him with a great deal of satisfaction, and then turned the Discourse upon the Ambassadors, whom he had sent into France, of whom he had no News. He enlarged a pretty while upon the Prizes of the King, seeming overjoyed to hear what the Ambassador told him of his Greatness, Wisdom, Conquests, and of the Peace which he had given to Europe.

In fine, he bid tell the Ambassador, that if he should need in need of any thing in his Kingdom for himself and Followers, he should address himself to his Barons, whom he had expressly charged to facilitate him in all things. So the first Audience ended with much satisfaction on both sides.

When the Ambassador came out of the Hall, the Lord Constable carried him to see the white Elephant which is so highly esteemed in the Indies, and which had been the cull of so many Wars. He is but little, and so old, that he is109 wholly all over. Several Mandans are appointed to take care of him, and he is only fed in Gold, at least the two Buffs that were set before him were of beaten Gold of an extraordinary size and Richness. His Apartment is flately, and the Ceiling of the Pavilion where he stands very nearly gilt. It being now late, the Ambassador came out of the Royal Palace, and in the same Pomp and Order that he came to his Audience went to the House that was prepared for him.

Sometimes after the Bishop was sent for by Order from the King, to translate the King of France his Letter into the Siam Language, which being done, it made a great impression upon the mind of that Prince. These are the terms where in it was conceived.

Most High, most Excellent, and most Magnanimous Prince, One most Dear and Good Friend, God augment Your Glory with a happy end, Siam.

I have learnt to My Trouble, the loss of the Ambassadors which You sent to Place in the Year 1681, and We have been informed by the Fathers Missionaries who are returned from Siam, and by the Letters which Our Ministers have received from them to return You every affectionate duty, or as far as You shall think fit, about Our Royal Friendship, to correspond therewith. We have chosen the Chevalier de Chaminet for Our Ambassador to Your Majesty, who will inform Your Majesty more particularly of Our Intentions, as to every thing that may contribute to the furthering of a solid and lasting Friendship between us. In the mean time we should be extremely glad to find occasions of expressing to Your Majesty the Gratitude where with we have learnt that you continue your Protection to the Bishops and other Apostolic Emisaries, who labor to instruct your Subjects in the Christian Religion; and the particular grief we have for Your Majesty, makes us anxiously desire, that you would yourself consider and learn from them the true Maxims and Sacred Mysteries of so holy a Law, wherein one lies...
A Voyage to Siam. Book IV.

the Knowledge of the True God, who alone can, after a long and glorious Reign over Your Subjects here, make You eternally Happy hereafter.

We have enquired of Our Ambassadors with some Precision of some of the most curious things of our Kingdom, which he will procure to You as a mark of Our esteem, and he will also let You know what it is We may desire for the benefit of the Trade of our Subjects, whereupon We pray God that He would augment Your Grace's with a most happy end.

Given at our Castle of Versailles the One and twentieth day of January 1687.

Your most dear and

COLBERT.

good friend,

LOUIS.

After the Ambassador had had Audience of the King, he rendred his first Visit to the Bishop of Metz, and the Bishop of Metz was in the Seminary. This Prelate is Apothecary in the greatest part of the Indies, and he has been labouring for a long time with much skill and zeal, in the Conversion of the Generals of the Indies, whose Language, he has not only studied, but also in Europe. He resides commonly at the Seminary ever since he has been weakened by long sickness. He is one of the most diligent Husbands in the whole

Book IV. A Voyage to Siam.

whole Town or Country above Siam; consisting of a large double house, built after the French way and two Stories high, where twenty people may be conveniently lodged. The rooms are large and high, some of them lying towards the Garden, and the rest towards a Church, which the King of Siam orders to be built hard by, and is not as yet finished. It will be very large, and if they had been so careful at first as to have made a regular design of it, it might have passed for a pretty Church even in Europe.

It is a Custom established at the Court of Siam, to give a Vest to all who have the honour of being introduced into the King's Presence, and it is always brought to the Ambassadors at the end of the Audience when they present them the Book.

The King being informed that the French made no use of Bred, and that perhaps a Suit of Cloaths made at Siam would not fit them, he would not have given them at that time, but some days after he sent his Excellence various pieces of a very rich Stuff with Flowers of Gold, and as much silk stuff for linings. He made a fine Present to the Gentlemen of his Retinue, that they might make lighter Cloaths, (these are the Kings own words) and if better with less inconvenience the great heat of a Climate to which they were not accustomed.

When the Ambassador received the King's Present, he caused a great deal of Money to be thrown out at the Windows, to the Servants of the Mandarin, who brought it, and to the People who were gathered together there in great Crowds. This made much noise in the City of Siam, and surprised all the People who had never before seen

The Ambassador ordered of Money to be thrown out at the Windows to others who brought him the Present.
A Voyage to Siam.

Book IV.

that kind of Magnificence. There was no other talk for a long time but of that rich shower of Gold and Silver, which fell in the Court of the Ambassador of France. That piece of stateable liberality much encreased the esteem which the Great Men and People had conceived of the French Nation.

So soon as the Ambassador was seated in the City of Siam, the Lord Conyngham who lived before in the Field of the Japanses, came to a fair House that is near the Ambassadors Palace, and lodged there; Nay all the while that we were at Siam he kept open Table for the French, and upon their account to all the other Nations. His House was very well furnished, and instead of Tapistry which would be intolerable at Siam because of the heat, all round the Draw there was a great Japan Screen, of a surprising height and beauty. He kept always two Tables for twelve People apiece, where all things were very delicate and very great plenty. There we had all sorts of Wine, Spanish, Rhenish, French, Cephalonian and Persian. We were served in great Silver Dishes, and the Cupboard was furnished with most lovely Gold and Silver Plate of Japan rarely well wrought, with a great many large Dishes of the same Metal and Workemanship.

The Rumour that was then spread abroad that the King was about to go in great State and make a Present to his Pagod, called the curiosity of the French Gentlemen, to be speculators of the Pomp. One of the Mandarin was always in the House to prevent disorders, and to take heed that nothing were wanting, took them to a place where they might conveniently see that they.

The Streets through which the King was to go were paled in with red Lattace behind, and thrown with Flowers in several places. The King came not abroad that day, nevertheless his Presence was carried to the Pagod with great Ceremony. First came a Man upon an Elephant playing upon Trumpet, with two Trumpeters on horseback before him, several Mandarin in horseback also marching two and two came after, and then a great number of Foot-Soldiers of those who are called Painted Armies advanced in good order. They were followed by fifteen Elephants, of which seven or eight carried Paraphra of these Sorties with gilt Chains, wherein sat as many Mandarin who were charged with Prefects of the King. After these Elephants came the Mandarin of the first and second Order who were known by the Silver and Gold Rings that went about their round Caps made in shape of a Pyramid.

Ambassadors have never more than two Audiences at the Court of Siam, one first when they come, and the other of Leave when they depart. Nay some years they have but one allowed them, and all their Affairs are to be treated with the Baronet, who gives the King an account of them. But his Majesty as a mark of particular fashion to this Embassie, sent the Ambassador word, that as often as he had a mind to have Audience, he was ready and willing to give him. Indeed, eight or ten days after the Audience of Entry, the Ambassador had another; it was private, and the Gentlemen was not admitted to it. The Ambassador took none with him but the Bishop of Mentapholis, the Abbot de Cleps and the Abbot de Lymer, the last stayed N
in the first Court of the Palace, where upon the side of a Canal under the shade of Trees there was a long Table of twenty four covers placed, with two side Tables furnished with most lovely Gold and Silver Plate of Japan and several sweet boxes, wherein the precious wood of Aqula was not spared.

The Audience being ended they fare down to Tables, and continued at it almost four hours. There were above an hundred and fifty dishes ferried up, and infinite number of Ragoos, not to speak of sweet-meats, of which commonly they make two Courses. Wine they had of five or six sorts; every thing was magnificent and delicate, and it was the Kings pleasure that the greatest Men of his Kingdom should that day serve the French at Table, to shew the greater honour to the Ambassador, and render that Regal more agreeable.

About that time they began to examine the conduct of the two Mandarins whom the Barcelon sent to France with Monseigneur Vicier. The complaints that were made of them had reach’d the Kings Ear, who was offended at their proceedings. The Ambassador spoke in favour of them, and the elder came off for a Months imprisonment, and some other small punishment: But it is not as yet known what the other will suffer, tho’ it be certain that had it not been so powerful an intercession, he had lost his head.

The Ambassador could not at first send the Preface which he brought to the Barcelon, who enjoys the highest place in the Kingdom of Siam. It behoved him to delay some time to have them read, and what was spoiled by the Air and Sea, restored.

relaxed. When every thing was in good condition, Monseigneur Vicier went to his House and presented them to him, and two days after the Ambassador payed him a visit.

Seeing there are no Coaches at Siam, he was carried in a very neat Chair which he brought with him from France. The Bishop took one like to those which the Superiors of the Tadaphii use; the Abbess di Chiqui was carried in a Palurgeon, and the Gentlemen went on Horseback, the Barcelone Lodgings were above a large quarter of a League from the Ambassadors Palace, tho’ there be but three Streets between them, but they are extremely long, all paved with Brick and bordered on each side with low houses, behind which there are trees that call a shade into the Streets, and which make pleasant walks when the heat is over. The Barcelone Houses is large, but built of Wood, as most of the Houses of Siam are, with this difference that it hath three Roofs one over another, which are the bridge of his Dignity. It was then surrounded with water of nearly the inundation, and the entry into it was over a Bridge which Landed upon a Terrai. A great many Mandarins made a Lane at the entry into the Bridge; and all alighted except the Ambassador, who was carried over to the Terrai, from whence he entered into the Hall where the Ambassador gives Audience. He came to receive the Ambassador at the Hall-door, and conducted him to the end of it, where he made him sit down in an Armed Chair opposite to his own. The Bishop and Abbess di Chiqui had also Chairs brought them to sit in by the Ambassador, and the Gentlemen stood at his back. The Conversation lasted not long;
A Voyage to Siam. Book IV.

It is about five and forty foot high and seven or eight broad; but what is most surprising, it is all of Gold. Of the building it is, the Malt of it must needs contain above an hundred parts of that Metal, and be worth at least twelve Million fix an hundred thousand Livres. They say that this prodigious Colossus was cast in the same place where it stands and that afterwards they built the Temple over it. It cannot be comprehended, where these people otherwise poor enough could find so much Gold; but it must needs touch one to the quick to see one single Idol richer than all the Tabernacles of the Churches of Europe. At the sides of it there are several others little but of Gold also and incrusted with precious Stones. However this is not the belt built Temple of Siam. It is true there are none that have any Figures of so great value, but there are several that have greater proportion, and Beauty and one amongst others, which I must here give a description of.

About an hundred paces South of the Palace, a description there is a great Park walled in; in the middle whereof stands a vault and high Fabric built crossways in the manner of our Churches, having over it five tiled girt domes of Stone or Brick, and of extraordinary Architecture, the dome in the middle is far bigger than the rest, which are on the extremities and at the ends of the Cloths. This building rests upon several Bases or Pedestals, which are raised one over another, tapering and growing narrower towards the top. The way up to it on the four sides is only by narrow and steep Stairs of iron with thirty and forty steps there, hands broad apiece and all covered with gilt Casts or Tin like the Roof. The bottom of the great Structure...
A Voyage to Siam. Book IV.

Stair-case is adorned on both sides with above twenty Statues bigger than the Life, some whereof are of Brass, and the rest of Calcare and all gilt, but representing but few of the Persons and Animals for whom they have been made. This great Pile of Building is encompassed with forty-four great Pyramids of different form and well wrought, ranked orderly upon different Plat-forms. On the lowest Plat-form stand the four greatest at the four corners of it upon large bases. These Pyramids end at the top in a long very slender Cone, extremely well gilt, and supporting a Needle or Arrow of Iron, that pierces through several Crystal balls of an unequal height. The body of these great Pyramids as well as of the rest is of a kind of Architecture that comes pretty near ours; but it has too much Sculpture upon it, and wanting both the simplicity and proportions of ours, it comes short of its beauty, at least in the eyes of those that are not accustomed to it. If we have time we may give a more perfect idea of this Architecture upon the second Plat-form, which is a little above the first, there are six and thirty other Pyramids some what less than the former making a square round the Pagod, nine on each side. They are of two different Figures, some taper into a point as the former did, and the rest are made round like a Bell on the top, after the manner of the domes which crown the Buildings; they are so mingled that there are not two together of the same form. Over these in the third Plat-form, are other four Pyramids on the four corners of it, which terminate in a point. They are all indeed than the first, but bigger than the second. All the Fabrick and Pyramids are included in a kind
dy of the Building; or the Ornaments about it, than in this Pagod. The Cloth of it is flanked on the outside on each hand with fourteen great sided Pyramids, rounded at the top in form of a Dome, above forty foot high, and above twelve foot square, placed in a Linne like a row of great Palars, in the middle whereof there are larger niches filled with gilt Pagods. We were so long taken up with the sight of these things that we had not time to consider several other Temples close by the Poll within the same compass of Walls. They judge of the Nobility of Families at Siam by the number of roofs that cover their Houses. This hath fire one over another, and the Kings Apartment hath seven.

Some days after we were arrived at Siam, there were two solemn Services performed in the Church which we have in the field of the Portuguese, the one for the late Queen of Portugal, and the other for the late King Don Alphonse. Father Suarez, a Dominican Friar, made the Funeral Sermons. After that the Festivals of the Coronation of Don Pedro king of Portugal, who reigns at present, was celebrated in the Church of the Dominicans, where one of their Fathers Preached. The Lord Conclave was at the charges of the Obsequies and Festivals. He would also have had a solemn Service performed for the late King of England, if he had had certain intelligence that he died a Catholic. He only expressed his joy at the Coronation of the Duke of York by Illuminations and Fire-works, which for their Novelty pleased the French very much. There were long Horns out of which streamed Fire that flamed up to a height like Water-works, and lasted a long while, their

Rejoysings performed at Siam for the Coronation of the Kings of England and Portugal. We were obliged to be there too, the Lord Conclave having come and taken us with him in his own Barge. The healths of all the Kings and Royal Families were drank there, with the noise of many great Guns.

After these Rejoysings came several Diversifications; the first was a kind of a Chinese Comedy, divided into Acts, various ball and antic postures, and some pretty surprising feats of Agility of Body forced for Interludes. Unles on the one side the Chinese were acting their Comedy, the Lord who are a people that border on that Kingdom to the North, gave the Ambassadors on the other side the direction of an Audacie Pepper-show, which did not much from ours. Between the Chinese and the Lord there was a Troop of Scythe Men and Women, cast into a Ring, who danced after a pretty odd manner, that's to say, with their hands aswell as feet, making as many Figures with the one as they did with the other. The voices of some Men and Women, who sang a little in the Noise, joined to the noise they made with their Hands, regulated all the cadence.

After these Plays Thunders appeared, who mounted to the top of high Bunklow planted on the one end like Masts, and about four score or an hundred feet high; they stood on the top of them on one foot, and holding the other in the Air, then
then placing their Head where their Foot last stood; they raised their Feet upright, hanging upon their Head. At length having hung by the Chin that rested only on the top of the Bumak, their Heads and the rest of their Body, hanging in the Air, they came down a long Ladder hanging upright, turning their Body above every step of the Ladders with incredible celerity and agility. Another placed upon a kind of litter or portable Couch was two or three Dagger with the points upwards, lying down, and then lay along upon them, without hurting his Body which was first naked; he afterwards made a very heavy Man hang upright upon his Body, and many of the points which touched his naked Skin pierced him. These directions were followed by several Conflation that were performed by Musicians of divers Nations. There was nothing extraordinary, neither in the Match nor Votes; yet the novelty and diversity of them made them pleasant enough not to prove tedious the first time. The Spaniards, Malaites, Fugos and Lams gave a tryal of their harmony by turns, striving to keep up one another. Their Instruments much remarkable enough and very imperfect; there was one that seemed extraordinary to us, it was mounted with a dozen of little Bells hanging by it, which being gently struck upon with little sticks, rendered a most harmonious sound. In fine the Scene concluded with another Chinese Comedy, which began a little to-day the Spectators, who were already weary. We were fair to be present at all these Shows. The Lord Con- ference having obliged us to lay them out in the end; and the Ambassador preferring us not to leave them.
Book IV. A Voyage to Siam.

The Eight and Twentieth of October being Sun. The King of day, we had notice that the King was to go abroad to do his Devotions, as his custom was at a famous Pagod upon the side of the River, Pagod. three Leagues from the Town, and at the same time to render a visit to the Same, who is chief of the Religion, and of all the Talaups of the Kingdom, and much respected by that Prince. He was accustomed on that occasion heretofore to do the Ceremony of cutting the Waters, that's to say, to strike the River with his Dagger at the time of the greatest inundation, and to command the Waters to retire: But this Prince having found by many years experience, that the Waters encroached sometIMes, for all they were ordered to abide, left off that Ridulous Ceremony, and thought it enough this year by going as in Triumph to the Pagod, to throw the zeal he has for his Religion. That this Magnificence might be seen by the Ambassador, who in secret bewailed the blindness of that Prince, there was a Gallery purposely preparred on the side of the River for him and his whole Family. The Lord Confluence who was there to explain the Order of all the Procesion, would have us all be present. This was the Order and Pomp of this Show.

Three and twenty Mandarins of the lowest Oder of the Palace appeared first: every one in a Raven of State, with a Red Chasue. These Balaus advanced in file on two Limes, and went along the side of the River. They were followed by Fifty other Balaus of his Maçesties Officers, who were all fitting in their Chasues, some of them being all over girt, and the rest only on the sides. The Balaus had from Thirty to Sixty Oars a piece, making
taking up a very large space; the reason of the order they went in. After these came twenty sailors, more, bigger than the former, in the middle of which there was a very high front, all gilt and fitting into a Pyramid; these were the Balions of Guards, as they call them, of which some had Four-score Rovers and gilt Carts, and the other four had only Carts breasted with Gold. Next after this long train of Balions, the King appeared in his royal seat placed in a Throne of a Pyramidal Figure and extraordinary well gilt. He was clad in a rich Clout of Gold set with precious Stones; he wore a white Cap, riding in a point, enameled with a Ring of Gold all flowered, and set thick with Precious Stones. The Kings Balions was gilt as low as the Water, and rowed by Six-score Watermen, who were upon their heads a kind of Topaz covered with plates of Gold, and on their Stomachs, Stomachers adorned in the same manner. The Kings Standard-bearer all glittering with Gold, fixed behind towards the Stern, with the Banner Royal of Clout of Gold on a Red ground; and four great Mandarin lay prostrate at the four corners of the Throne. The Balions was attended by three others of the same form, that were every where as stately, but the Topaz and Breast-plates of the Rovers were not so rich.

The King intending that my Lord Ambassador should sit him, sat near to him, advancing but slowly, that he might have time to consider him. The Ambassador rose up out of his Seat, and made three profound bows to the King, all the rest who sat upon a Carpet made him bow inclination of Body. The basons that were upon the sides of the River, sitting on the ground, so
Figure XXI verso-Figure XXII
Book IV. A Voyage to Siam.

soon as they saw the King at a great distance, got upon their knees, and putting their join'd hands upon their heads, in that posture touched the ground with their forehead, and left not off making the 
Zamzage, till the King was out of sight. Twenty 
Bahas with Glister and Oars streaked with Gold 
followed the Kings, and other sixteen half painted 
and half gilt, brought up the Rear. We reck 
oned in all One hundred and fifty men, of 
which the biggest were near Six score foot long, 
and hardly fix foot over at the broadest place. 
I have inferred the biggest of the most extra 
orinary, the sides of them are even with the Water, 
and the ends bend and are crooked and rife very 
high; most part of these Bahas have the Figure 
of Sea Horses, Dragon, and other sorts of An 
imals. Nothing but the Poop and Prow are gilt, 
the rest hardly appearing above Water; some of 
them are beautified with several Figures made of 
pieces of Mother of Pearl whitewith they are in 
alid.

After that the King had said his Prayers at the 
Pagod, and there made his Presents, he went to 
one of his Palaces hard by, and in the Evening 
returned to the Town, according to his custom, 
upon his Return he took pleasure to make a 
Match at Rowing, and proposed a Reward to 
tho' that should get first to the Palace, from 
whence he set out in the Morning; all the After 
noon was spent in drawing up the Bahas into Squa 
drons, and to match one against another. Whilst 
matters were thus ordering the Ambassador came 
to see the Show. He was conducted by the Lord 
Conference, who also invited us, and sent us a Bahas 
to carry us along with him. The King would needs
A Voyage to Siam. Book IV.

Leagues to the Northward of Siam, where he spent nine or ten Months of the year, because he is more at liberty there, and is not obliged to be that up as he is in Siam, that he may keep his Subjects in Obedience and Respect.

The Lord Conferences, who having seen our People for being the most Christian King's Mathematicians, was resolved to procure us a private Audience at Laos, would have us go thither with our Instruments, and intimated to us, that the King was desirous to entertain us at Court, until we should embark for Laos. He sent us two great Basons for our Baggage, and another of four and twenty Oars to carry us. We parted the fifteenth of November about One of the Clock in the Afternoon, and went in the Retinue of my Lord Ambassador.

About two Leagues from the Town upon a The Funeral wall Plain covered with Water, and reaching out of a great wall, we met with a new Steeple; and that was the Obelisk of a famous Telephus, chief of the Religion of the Papuas. His Body was laid in a Coffin of Aromatic Wood. The Coffin was mounted upon a Funeral Pile, round which were four great Pillars of gilt Wood, which carried an high Pyramid of several Stories. This kind of burning Chappel was accompanied with several little pretty high and square Towers made of Woodland covered with Paffboard very rudely painted, with a great many Paper Figures. All this was surrounded with an Enclosure built square, upon which several other Towers were placed at competent Distances. Four of them were as high as the Pyramid in the middle, and stood in the four Corners; and on each side of that...
that great Square there were two other Towers less than the former. They were all full of Fire-works, and we saw many Flying Fuses come out of them. The four great Towers placed at the four Corners of the great Square, were joined together by little Wooden House, painted with several eyes like Figures of Dragons, Apes, Devils with horns on their heads, &c. Between these House there were at competent distances certain Openings contrived in form of a Portal to let Balios in and out. The Telephons of Pegia, is a vast number, in their Balios, took up almost the whole space that was between the Funeral Fun and the great square Enclosure. They all looked with a grave and modest Comeliness, now and then flogging, and sometimes keeping profound Silence. An infinite number of People, Men and Women indifferently came after them, and affixed at this Funeral Pump.

So now a new and unexpected Scene made my Lord Ambassador stop for some time, and us with him, that we might view the Ceremonies of that last Burial. However, we saw nothing but mimical Dances, and certain ridiculous Farcies, acted by the Pegians and Siamuts under Sheds of Bambous that were open on all hands. They acted the Postures of Men polliot, with ridiculous Masks upon their Faces. Seeing this Funereal Scene was to kill all Night, and that we had four or five Leagues to go before we could come to the place of Lodging, we saw only the beginning of it, and some Fire-Works. The Honours of this Nature given to the Dead a-mongst the Siamuts, makes them strongly addicted to their Religion. The Telephons, who are yer
A Voyage to Siam

book IV.

that place with us, ordered large Lodgings belonging to the King, so to furnish'd for us, that we might have more room there, whilst he could accommodate us more conveniently.

Within a few days after our Arrival at Lavon, The King, the Lord Conspicuous conducted my Lord Ambassador to an Audience. We all waited on the Ambassador, at him to the Palace, it being the Lord Conspicuous's Audience at Lavon, and that we should do so, because the King had a mind to see us privately, and would have us make the Observation of the Eclipse of the Moon which was to be within three Weeks, in his Presence. The Bishop and Abbot of Lyson, followed the Ambassador to the Hall of Audience.

In the mean time we considered the Garden and outside of the Palace. It has a most excellent Situation, being level by the River side upon a smooth and even Emnacement, and is of a large Compass. We saw nothing remarkable but two great distances of Piers of Buildings, and the Roofs all lined with Gold. In this they are singular, that they are covered with yellow varnished Piers, which glitter like Gold when the Sun shines upon them; we were told that every one of these Tiles cost about ten Guineas. Without the Palace we saw a Lion presented by the French Company to the King; it seemed to be bigger, handier, and stronger than those at Versailles, but his Hair is not altogether so yellow.

The Audience lasted almost two Hours. Whilst they discourse'd of several things, the King took occasion to tell the Ambassador, that he was informed six Jesuits came with him; that they were the French Kings Mathematicians, whom O h

Page 194-195
his Majestie first to make Observations in the Indies, and to labour in the perfection of Art: and that he should be glad to see those Learned Men.

The Ambassador let not slip the occasion of doing us that good Office, and spoke many things in our Favour. The King was not then so high above the Ambassador as he was at the first Audience. He wore upon his Head a white painted Cap, encompassed below with a Circle of Diamonds. He was clad in a stuff Coat purl'd with Gold, having over it a large Veil of a very fine and transparent Stuff. He had some large Diamonds on his Fingers, but they were black and ill set. As he has more wit than your Oriental Princes commonly have, he said many things very witty to the Glory of the most Christian King, and obligingly for the Ambassador. He added, that he prayed the God of Heavens to give him a more speedy and successful Voyage homeward than he had in coming abroad.

In the Evening the Lord Connaught invited abroad the Ambassador with all his Attendants, to take the Air, all severally mounted upon Elephants. They that ride them sit on the middle of their Back in a kind of a very wide Chair environed with small gilt Rails, but without a Back, whilst two Officers that serve the Elephant, one upon his Neck, and another on his Rump, govern him with a great Iron Hook, as may be seen by the Figure. It is to be observed, that these Beasts have their Domestic Servants as Persons of Quality have: The least hath fifteen men that wait upon them quarterly, and others have twenty, twenty five, thirty and forty, according to their Rank; but the white Elephant has an hundred.

deed. The Lord Connaught told me that the King hath at least twenty thousand in his whole Kingdom, not to reckon the wild that are among the Woods and Mountains. Sometimes they take fifty, sixty, nay eighty of them at one single blast of Hunting.

The Gentlemen of the Academy Royal of Sciences recommended it to us to examine whether or not all Elephants had Claws in their feet; we saw not so much as one but that had five on each foot, at the end of five great Toes; but their Toes are so short, that they hardly peep out of the Belly Lamp. We observed that their Ears are nothing near so big as they are commonly painted, and are left by a half than they are made to be in the Cut that was given us of one. Some we have seen who had Teeth of extraordinary Beauty and Lengths; they reach above four feet out of the mouth of some of them, and at certain Distances are adorned with Rings of Gold, Silver and Copper. In one of the King's Courtyard-Houses, upon the River side, about a League from Siam, I saw a little white Elephant, which they design shall be the Successor of him that is in the Palace, who, as they say, is near three hundred years old. This little Elephant is somewhat bigger than an Ox, hath many Mandrines in his Service; and for his sake there is great respect paid to his Mother and Aunt that are kept with him. The King of Cambodia presented him to the King of Siam about two or three years since; when he was to demand assistance from him against one of his Subjects that had revolted, and was supported by the King of Cambodia.

The Elephants have five Toes in each foot.
A Description of Siam.

The Town of Loeus stands most pleasantly, and in a most wholesome Air; the Campus of it is pretty large, and it is become very populous since the King hath been pleased to live much there. He designs to fortifie it, and Monterce de la Marre, an able Engineer, whom the Ambassador left at St. Ann, hath already drawn the Plan of the Fortifications that are to be made, to render it a strong and regular place. It is seated upon a Height, which descents all the Country round about, not commanded by any Place, and on one side is washed by a great River that runs at the Foot of it. It is true, that River is not at all considerable for during the time of the Intumation. But being the Foundation and Raines left seven or eight Months, on that side which besides is very deep, the Town cannot be besieged. The other sides are either Marshes which may be easily overflowed, or rising Grounds in Form of an Amphitheater, which are designed to be taken into the Town, and which will serve for deep Ditches and terraced Ramparts, proof against all Artillery. They talk about the Fortifications of Laos as those of Bandois is fortified, which is a place of greater importance, and, as it were, the Key of the Kingdom of Siam. These Works will soon be completed, because an infinite number of Workmen will be employed, and the Ground is easy to be levelled.

The King of Siam gives a private Audience to the French Ambassadors.

November the two and twentieth we had Notice from us, that the King would give us a private Audience the same day. About Four of the Clock in the Afternoon the Lord Conspire carried us to the Palace, and made us pass three Courts, where we saw several Mandarins lying prostrate on each side. As we entered the same Court, we found a large Canopy, where that Minister wished us to sit down. We had no sight of Ceremonies, nor did they oblige us to be barefooted, which was a great Work of Distinction. So soon as we were set down, the King, who was going abroad to see a Fight of Elephants, where he thought to entertain the Ambassador, mounted the Elephant magnificently armiied, which waited for him at the Gate of his Apartment; and having perceived us at ten or twelve Steps distance from him, he came up to us. Our Father Superior had prepared a Complement to thank him for the honour he did us in admiring us into his Presence, as it had been concerted with the Lord Conspire; but that Minister perceiving the King in haste to be gone, spoke for us. The King eying us one after another attentively, and with a smiling and gracious Countenance, told us, how being informed that the King of France had sent us all his forces into China upon a great Design, he had designed to see us, that he might tell us by word of mouth, that if we found in need of any thing in his Kingdom, either for the Service of the King our Master, or for ourselves in particular, we should address our talents to his Minister, whom he had ordered to furnish us with all we wanted. We had no time to make Answer to that Favour any otherwise than by humble Thanks and profound Admiration. We only let him know that we should acquitte the King our Master with the Obligations that he had put upon us.

The King went his way, and having passed through this Court into another, amidst a Lane of Mandarins prostrate before him in great silence, with...
A Voyage to Siam. Book IV.

with their Firebrads against the ground, he
found the first Gate of the Palace the chief
of the Companies of the European Merchants
bent-footed, on their knees, and leaning upon
their elbows, to whom he gave a short Audience. The
Lord Connoisseurs having told us that it would be;
we should write the Compliment that was to be
made to the King, and then present it, to his
Majesty, Father Fontenoy, who foretold that the
Circumspstion would not be unnecessary, because
perhaps he might not have time to read it, pre-
ented it to the Kings, who ordered the Lord
Connoisseurs to take it. It was both in the Thai
Language and the French, and concisely in their
Terms.

SIR,

The Jaffas
Harangue
preferred to
the Kings.

We have left the greatest King
that France ever had, but have
had the Happiess in coming hither, to find
again in your Majesty the Qualities of that
Prince. That Greatness of Soul which is
generously incites you to affait your Allies,
the Courage wherewith you express your Em-
nies, the Advantages you have lately set
over them, that extraordinary Submission
of your Subjects, that Magnificence where-
in you show your self to them, these famous
Embalms which you receive from the remo-
test Parts of the World, that Protection
you give to Strangers, that particular Affec-
tion you express toward the Ministers of
the

Book IV. A Voyage to Siam.

the Gospel, that Goodness which you so
beautifully make all appear towards us;
All these things, Sir, are convincing Ar-
uments that you are a Magnanimous, Pu-
rious, Politic and Equitable King, and
of Fame and the Acclamations of your
Subjects publish it, the greatest Prince that
ever sing'd the Scepter of Siam.

The Sciences, Sir, that we make Profes-
sion of, are esteemed all over Europe. Our
King does so encourage them that for
their U[e, he has erected Stately Observa-
tories, and for their sake given his August
Name to our Comenots College where they
are taught. We have studied to improve
them from our Youth upwards, especially
Astronomy, which hait agree with our
Inclinations, because it raises our Minds
to the frequent Contemplation of Heaven,
the Habitation of the Blessed, and the Coun-
try we only aspire unto. His most Chris-
tian Majesty knowing that it is our Pro-
fection to make use of Human Sciences, that
by means of them we may bring Men to
the Knowledge and Love of the true God;
and being perswaded that the Mathematics
have been our particular Study, has chos'en
us to go to China, in quality of Mathematicians:
So that it is a Charge laid upon us
to join our Endeavors with those whom he
keeps at home by himself in the improve-
A Voyage to Siam. Book IV.

ment of Arts and Sciences. For the more ease accomplishment of so great a Design, our great Monarch hath given us Letters Patent, which recommend us to all the Princes of the Earth, in consideration whereof, your Majesty hopes Honour upon us by admitting us into your Presence.

It is impossible for us, Sir, to make any suitable Returns for so great Favour; but since we cannot do it as we ought to do, we hope your Majesty will suffer us to do it the best way we can. We are the Servants of the true God, and the Subjects of a great Monarch. As the Subjects of so great a King, we will perform him all the Favour your Majesty hath showed us, and as Servants of the true God, we will make our earnest Prayers to him, that he would in all things prosper your Reign, and so enlighten your Majesty with his Divine Truths, that after so glorious a Reign upon Earth, you may come to the Possession of the Glories of Heaven.

Some days after the J Confiance discovered his Majesty about a Project which he had had a long time in his thoughts, of bringing to Siam twelve Hebrew Mathematicians, whom he had already demanded of our Reverend Father General, and about the Design of building an Observatory in imitation of Paris and Pekin. He made his Majesty sensible of the Glory and Profit that would thereby thereby rebound to him, and the Advantage that his Subjects would reap from it; who would be taught the finest Arts and Sciences of Europe. His Majesty much approved that Project, and bid the Lord Confiance tell him that he would have an Observatory built in his Kingdom, which he would follow upon the Fathers of the Company of Jet, whom he much esteemed, and whom he would protect and favour in all things that lay in his power. Whereupon the Lord Confiance thought it fit that some of us should return to France to profit that Affair, which seemed to him to be of extreme consequence for Religion. He mentioned it one day to the Father Superior whom we were all three together. We joyfully consented to it; and the Commission falling upon me, I had Orders prudently to prepare for my Return. It grieved me to the heart then to see my Riff for a long time removed to so great a distance from Ghana, which I had longed after for so many years.

The Lord Confiance, who is no less ready to embrace the Occasions of advancing the Glory of God, than of procuring Advantages to his Matter, communicated to us another View, which he thought might contribute much to the Construction of the Temple. He pretends that if once their Efforts and Attention can be gained by Zeal, Merit and Learning, it will be no difficult matter to dispose them to bearken to Instruction: That he thoroughly knew the temper of that Nation, and no man better, why Christianity hath made so great a progress at Siam after so many years endeavours of having it planted there; that besides the Observatory, there must be another.
A Voyage to Siam. Book IV.

Upon the burning hot Sand bare-fooled and bare-headed, and continually exposed to the heat of the Sun, which is extraordinary there, because the Boumen wear no Stockings nor Shoes, and never cover their Head; living on nothing but Herbs, and spending three or four days without eating, under a Tree, or on the high way, waiting till some Indian affected with such surprising austerity should come and hear them. God hath so much blest their Zeal and Mortification, that they have converted above three thousand Indians, and the People come flocking in so great numbers to be instructed, that they value not all the hardship and trouble they have endured.

The same Churchman added, that he had seen one of those Fathers, whose feet had been all chopp'd with the burning Sun, which getting afterwards into the Wounds, put him to extreme pain, and raised strange Swellings. Upon what he told us of their Mifions, we earnestly desired to see a more ample Relation of them, being persuaded that we should therein meet with rare Examples of Zeal, and great ground of Edification.

...
When it was resolved upon, that I should return to France, the Lord Conflans redoubled the testimonies of friendship, wherewith he had till then honours'd me, telling me that he wished he might frequently discourse me in private. Next day I went to see him, according as he had enjoyned me at parting. I found him taken up in preparing Prisons for those who had had the greatest hand in the favour which the King had done us of sending us to China; and making us draw near to see them, their and the
but very mean Presents, said he, for so great Lords. But you shall tell them, Father, that I came to know of it but very late, and after I had given away all the finest and most curious things I had. For besides the Presents which he sent to France, and that he had given to the French who were in Siam, he had sent some very considerable to Portugal, by the three Ambassadors whom the King of Siam had dispatched to Lisbon, some time before we arrived there. Nor is it, said he, a Present that I would have them take as from me, but as from one of your Brothers, to thank them for the Goodness they have for you, and the Protection they honour you with. We could make no answer to such obliging Expressions, but by our种种 humble Thanks; but he would not hear us, interrupting and adjuring us not to speak to him in that Strain, that being our Brother, he was persuaded he did no more but his Duty.

The same day that we had Audience, the King was to treat the Ambassador with a Fight of Elephants, and his Majesty had already commanded that they be made ready for us, that we might follow him to the Field of Battle, which was out of Town. The Lord Cañazans gave us a Mus- ders to be our Guides, and as we came out of the Palace we found the Elephants with their gilt Chairs, and very neat Cushi-ions. Everyone got up on the Back of his own in this manner. The Person (for so they call the Man that sits on the Elephant’s Neck to govern him) made the Ele- phant kneel, who afterward lay half down on one side, so that one could put his Foot upon one of his Fore-legs, which he thrust out, and then up-
on his Belly; after that, the Beast rising a little up again, gave one time to sit down conveniently in the Chair which he carried on his Back; one may also make use of a Ladder, as some do, to get upon the Elephants Back. It is for the Convenience of Strangers, who are not accustomed to Elephants, that they put Chairs on their Backs. The Natives of the Country, whatsoever their Quality be, unless it be the King, ride on the Neck and conduct them themselves, except when they go to War, for then, besides two Passers, who get up one upon the Neck, and the other on the Rump, the Mandarin armed with a Lance, or a kind of Javelin, sits on the Elephants Back, as I may term it, at a Marching of Elephants, whether the Mandarin go armed as to a Battle. I observed also that the King, who was in a kind of Throne, started up upon his Legs when the wild Elephants would have forced their way through on his Side, and got upon the Neck of his to stop them.

We followed the King then into a large Plain, above an hundred Paces from the Town. The King, mounted on an Elephant, had my Lord Ambassador on his Right-hand at fifteen or twenty Paces distance, the Lord Confort on his Left-hand, and all round a great many Mandarins prostrate at the Feet of his Elephant out of respect. We presently heard some Trumpeters which made a very harsh and inarticulate Sound, then the two Elephants which were to fight round and made a most horrid Noise. They were tied by the Hind-feet with great Rope, held by several Men, that they might be drawn off, in case the Shock proved too hard. They
A Voyage to Siam. Book V.

China-Night Vases, right Bezoar-Stones, the Carrying Basket that is worth eight times its weight in Silver, the odoriferous Wood of Ag nulla, so much esteemed in the Indies, and excellent Tea in great quantity. These Presents seemed to be of so considerable a Value, that for some time it was thought by many that they had been sent by the King.

We spent most of the days we stayed at Louw-vo in Shows. The Fight we just now mentioned, was followed by another of Elephants against a Tyger; we were obliged to be there as well as the rest, and mounted on Elephants. We made use of no other Beast to ride on, that we might not scandalize the Thalayoth, who say that it is prohibited to them to ride on Horse-back.

About a quarter of a League from the Town, they had raised a high Palisado of Bamboos, about an hundred Paces Square. Three Elephants appointed to fight the Tyger, were got into the middle of the Lits. They had a kind of large Breast-plate, which covered their Head and part of their Trunk. So soon as we were come, out of a Lodge that was in a low place, they brought a Tyger, of a Shape and Colour which seemed strange to the French that were Spectators. For besides that, he was much taller, greater, and more lumpish than those that we had seen in France; his Skin was not spotted in that Fashion, but instead of Spots scattered here and there without order, it had long broad Stripes that encompassed it like Rings. These Stripes beginning at the Back joyned under the Belly, and continuing to the End of the Tail, made the upper white and round black rings, which were so very thick, and covered...
A Voyage to Siam.  Book V.

A voyage to Siam.

ward made all the shifts he could to avoid them. They would certainly have killed him, had not the Ambassador begg'd his Pardon of the Lord Confiance, who put an end to the Combat.

Next Day towards the Evening, we went to the Palace with my Lord Ambassador; there we saw an Illumination, which was yearly made at the beginning of the Year: It consisted of eighteen hundred or two thousand Lights, some whereof were placed in little Windows purposely made in the Walls that environ the Palace, and the rest in Lanterns, in a pretty singular Order. Above all we admired some certain large Chinese Lanterns like to Globes, which are made of one single piece of transparent Horn as clear as Glass, and some others of a kind of China-glass made of Rice. These Illuminations were accompanied with the Noise of Drums, Files and Trumpets. All the while that the King was present at this Show, the Prince gave the like to the Court Ladies in another part of the Palace.

When the King was gone, we had time to consider all things at a near distance. The Lord Confiance shewed us the Elephant Prince, who is of an extraordinary Height and Beauty; we were told that they called him by that Name, because he came into the World the same day that the present King was born. He made us also observe near to the King's Apartment, a Pavilion where they keep the Elephant that is upon Guard, it is one of those that are in the Palace, and are relieved by turns, being always kept in a readiness, if the King should chance to want them by Day or by Night. Having often mentioned Elephants, and the different manners, they are harnessed, etc.
A Voyage to Siam. Book V.

The Moors make a Feast to celebrate the Memory of the great Tungara, that outwitted the Fishermen for fifteen or sixteen Hours together; nor how the Singers that raised their Voice of their Prince as high as was possible for them, could sing it so long. The rest of the Procession looked modest enough, some marched before the Singers, who surrounded Coffins carried upon eight Men's Shoulders, and the rest were mingled in the Crowd with them. There were a great many Men and Women, Young and Old there, who have embraced the Mahometan Religion. For since the Moors have got footing in the Kingdom, they have drawn over a great many People to their Religion, which is an Argument that they are not so addicted to their Superstitions, but that they can forsake them, when our Millions have had Patience and Zeal enough to instruct them in our Mysteries. It is true, that Nation is a great Lover of Shows and Splendid Ceremonies, and by that means it is that the Moors, who celebrate all their Festivals with a great deal of Magnificence, have persuaded many of them to the Sect of Mahomet.

Thrice Shows made us heartily comse the Misfortune of those poor Indians, and we often disapproved of the Fruit that so many able Men as are in Europe, and particularly in France, might reap amongst them, if they had as much Zeal as Learning.

The King who took pleasure to give the Ambassador new Diversions daily, would have him to be the manner of taking and taming Elephants. This being a thing unknown in Europe, and we having been Wonders of it, the Reader,
I hope, will be glad to find here an example and exact description of the same.

About a quarter of a League from Luang there is a kind of an Amphitheater, of a large and long-square figure, encompassed with high Walls and Terraces, where the Spectators are placed. Along these Walls within runs a Parapet of thick Pillars fastened in the Ground at a foot distance one from another, behind which the Huntsmen retire when they are pursued by the frightened Elephants. There is a very large opening made towards the Countrys, and opposite to it, on the side of the Town one lets, which leads into a narrow Alley through which an Elephant can hardly pass, and that Alley ends in a large opening, where they completely saw him at length.

When the day appointed for this Hunting is come, Huntsmen go into the Woods, mounted on Ste-Elephants which are trained to the Game, and cover themselves with leaves of Trees that they may not be seen by the wild Elephants. When they are got pretty forward in the Forest, where they think some Elephant may be, they make the Female give some noys that are proper to attract the Males, who presently answer by dreadful roarings. Then the Huntsmen perceiving them at a vast distance return back again, and greatly lead the Females towards the Amphitheater we mentioned; the wild Elephants never fail to follow them; he whom we saw tamed cured with them, and so soon as he was there the Bart was shut; the females kept on their way cross the Amphitheater, and at one another tails past along the little Alley that was at the other end.

wild Elephant which had followed them to that place, hopping at the entry of the narrow path, all manner of ways were used to make engage him, they made the females who were beyond the Alley, cry some Siam's, provoked him by clapping their hands and crying pat, pat, others prick'd him with long sharp pointed poles, and when they were pursu'd by him, slip between the Pillars and hid themselves behind the Parapets which the Elephant could not break through at length having pursu'd several of the Huntsmen he made at one single Man with a great deal of Fury. The Man run into the Alley and the Elephant after him; But 6 o'clock as he was within, he was taken, for the Man having made his escape; they fell purposely too Parapets one before the other behind the Elephant, so that being out of his power to go forwards or backwards or to turn himself, he struggled prodigiously and made terrible cries. They endeavoured to pacifie him by throwing buckets full of water upon his Body, rubbing him with leaves, pouring Oyl upon his Ear, and they brought tame Elephants both Males and Females to him who cured him with their Trunks. In the mean time they fas-
nened Ropes under his belly and to his hind-feet, that so they might pull him out from thence, and they perfused in throwing water upon his Trunk, and Body to cool him. At length they brought him to one of their tame Elephants that are accustomed to attract the new-comers. An Officer was mounted upon him who made him go forwards and backwards, to show the wild Elephant that there was no danger; and that he might come out. So at length they opened the
the gate to him and he followed the other to the end of the Alley. So soon as he was there they fatted an Elephant to each side of him, another was before and pulled him by a rope into the way that they would have him take, whilst a fourth made him go forwards by thumping him with his head behind, until he came to a kind of passage where they tied him to a great Pillar made for that purpose, which stands like the Compass of a Ship. They left him there till next day that he might spend his anger; but whilst he tormented himself about that Pillar, a Brahmin (that is to say one of the Indian Priests who are numerous in Siam) clothed in white and mounted on another Elephant drew nigh, and turning gently about this which was tied, sprinkled him with a certain water consecrated after their manner, which he carried in a Vessel of Gold. They believe that that Ceremony makes the Elephant lose his natural fierceness, and fits him for to serve the King. The day following he began to go with the rest, and in a fortnights time is fully tamed.

Ambit all those diversion the Ambassador was wholly taken up about the Subject of his Embassy, which was the Conversation of the King; but perceiving that he had no solid nor positive answer as to that, he resolved to draw up a short memorial, which he intended should be presented to the King by the Lord Councill. He spoke of it to that Minisher, who in a long conference they had together dissuaded him from pressing the King upon that point; but the Ambassador very prudently still perlufated in his opinion, and prayed the Lord Councill to present that writing to his Majesty.

Book V.

THE Ambassador of France hath put into his Memorial which contains certain proposi-
tions wherein he is to give an account to the King of the Lord Councill to the King; but before I read it to your Majesty, suffer me.

Sir, if you please, to lay before you the principal reason that engaged the most Christian King to send you to Siam an Embassy. That is to make a Prince, your good friend, signify the greatness of your soul and the generosity of your Kings in the world by the Ambassadors and Magnificent Presents, which you designed for him, without other interest than that of de-
ing the Royal Crown of a Prince to China, and to Inclination to the King of Siam; and then presenting that your Majesty's Ministers had sent to the King of Siam two Mandarins with considerable Presents to congratulate the birth of the Grand-Son of the King great of King, worthy of a perpetual Pomphry, which was equally represent to France the image of his adorable Person, and further the happiness of his People. That great Mandarins, Sir, being surprised by so magnificent a procedure resolved to answer those obliging offers, and to do so, desired a present worthy of himself; and further to the dignity of your Majesty; for to profess you were Riches, it is to your Kingdom, Sir, that Strengths come.

Page 139 of 196
A Voyage to Siam. Book V.

made him resolve to proceed to you, Sir, to see the same means that have procured him so much glory and happiness, and which are no other than the knowledge and Worshipping of the true God, which is only to be found in the Christian Religion. He offers your Majesty the same by his Ambassador acquainting you and your whole Kingdom to receive and follow it.

Your Princes, Sir, is more admirable still by his Wisdom, Judgment, and Prudence, than by his Courage and Victories. Your Majesty knows his generosities and Royal Fraternity, you cannot make a better choice than to follow the wise Counsel of so great a King your good friend. For my part, Sir, I never beheld any thing of this great God for your Majesty, but that Grace and I would be ready to lay down a thousand lives that I might obtain it of the Divine Being.

May it please your Majesty to consider that in that attribute, you will crown all the great and justificative exploits of your Reign, you will extol your Humanity, and preserve to your self immortal Honour and Glory in the next World.

Ah, Sir, I assure your Majesty not to send back the Embassador of so great a King with discomfiture, be it known in the name of the King his Master, for establishing and rendering your Alliance and Royal Amities inviolable at least if your Majesty hath entertained any good thoughts, or if you find the least inclination to embrace that Party, that you would make it known. It is the most acceptable news that he can carry to the King his Master. Now if your Majesty be resolved not to confound it in what I have had the honour to represent to you, or that you cannot give a favourable answer to the Embassador, I beg of you to excuse me from carrying your Royal answer, which cannot but be displeasing to the great God whom I adore. The
A Voyage to Siam.

Book V.

Book of Peria was arrived in the Kingdom of Siam, and that he brought your Majesty the Alcoran to the end you might follow it. In that view the Ambassador of France thought himself obliged to offer your Majesty the Christian Religion, and to adjure you to embrace it. If it be true, answered the King, that the Ambassador of Peria brings me the Alcoran? It is so reported (replied the Lord Constan.) To which the King forthwith made answer. I wish with all my heart the Ambassador of France were here to see what reception the Ambassador of Peria shoud have from me. Certainly if I had no Religion at all I would sooner change the Mahometans.

But to answer the Ambassador of France, continued the King, you shall tell him from me, I think my self extremely obliged to the King of France his Majesty, finding in his Memoirs the marks of his most Christian Majesty's Royal Friendship, and since the kind to that great Prince hath done me so many good offices, I cannot sufficiently acknowledge his Civility; but that I am extremely pleased that the King of France may good Friend be prepared to difficult a thing unto me, whereas I am not in the least acquainted what I refer my self to the Witnesses of the most Christian King, that be himself may judge of the importance and difficulty which occur in so much a matter as the change of a Religion received and followed throughout my whole Kingdom without interruption during the space of two thousand two hundred twenty new years.

After all, it is strange to me that the King of France my good Friend should in so much concern himself in an Affair that relates to God, whereas it would seem to me that the King of Siam does not at all interfere himself, but leaves it solely Religion.
A Voyage to Siam. Book V.

A Voyage to Siam.

Book V.

his majest Christian Monarch, and all his Subjects.

This was the answer of the King of Siam in

the same terms that he delivered it to his Minis-

ter, and as he gave it in writing to my Lord

ambassador. The wit of that Prince sufficiently

appears by that relating who without any know-

ledge of the Sciences of Europe, hath alleged

in to much force and perspicuity the most plea-

sable reasons of the Pagan Philosophy against the

true Religion. They who know the up-

lightments of that Prince cannot doubt but that he

acceded to what he thought, and what seemed
to him most rational.

The King having said so, was silent for some

time, and then eyeing the Lord Conclave: What

do you think (aided he) the Ambassador will an-

swer to these Regale which I commanded you to give

them in writing? I shall not fail Sir, answered the

King of Siam's Lord Conclave to obey your Majesties Orders; Objects, ab-

out I cannot tell what the Ambassador of France

will answer to what you have now said to me,

which seems to be of very great weight and con-

sequence. Sure I am, he must needs be surpris-

ed at the high wisdom and wonderful perspicuity

that he'll perceive thereby in your Majesty.

However I fancy he may answer, that it is

ture all the Beings which God had Created

adorable to every one of his Subjects, but that

there is this difference between Man and Beasts,

that when God Created those, he gave them
different properties and particular infinities,

to know what is good for them and pur-

se it without any reflection, to deform their

and avoid it without any imitation. So the

Stag flies from the Lion, and Tyger the first time

it.
A Voyage to Siam. Book V.

he fear them, the Chickens new hatched dead
the Kate and all under the wings of the Hen
without any other instruction but what they have
received from Nature. But in the Creation of
Man God hath endowed him with a Mind and
Reason to distinguish the Good from the Evil,
and Divine Providence hath thought it fit in
pursuing and loving the good which is proper
for him, and avoiding the evil that is contrary
to him, with reference to his ultimate end which
is to know and love God, Man should from the
Divine Bounty merit an eternal Reward.

The truth is, it is as easy for Man to make use
of his hands, eyes, and feet, in the commis
sion of evil as in doing of good, if his prudence
enlightened by the Wisdom of God directed him
to pursue the ways of real Grandeur, which
are not to be found but in the Christian Religion,
wherein Man finds the means of serving God as
ebly pleases his Divine Goodness. But all Men
fall short of holy and of rational notions, it is
easy to as with your Majesties Officers, who are
not all equally addicted to your Interests, as you
but too well know, tho all of them call themselves
your Subjects, and account it an honour to be
employed in your Service. So all Men fear
God, it is true; but in a very different manner.
Some like Beasts follow their Passions and irregular
appetites and live in the Religion they have
been brought up in, without examining it. But
others perceiving the great difference between
themselves and Beasts rule themselves above their
fancies, and by means of their Reason, which
God has not to enlighten endeavour to know
their Creator, and the true Worship which he
would

Book V. A Voyage to Siam.

would have men render unto him, without any
interest but that of pleasing him, and to this
sincere search of the truth, God Almighty hath
supplier Man Salvation. Hence it is that negli
gence in not being instructed, and weakness
in not following that we judge the right, will ren
der us guilty in the sight of God who is the
Supreme Judge of all Fates.

This answer from a Man of no Studies, who
from ten years of age had been applied to
Trade and Commerce, wrought a great surprize
in me, when he did me the honour to acquaint
me with it. I confided in him, without any fear
of flattery, that a Divine commen
tated in the
Study of Religion, would have been hard put
to it to have answered better. The King was
furnished with the discourse of the Lord Con
fidence, and if any knowing Man, who is acceptable
to him, hath the happiness to inflame into his
favour, and procure his esteem, it is not to be
depaired but that he may be brought to know
and embrace the Truth; and if once he come to
know it, seeing he is the absolute Master of his
People, who adore him, all the Nations who are
under his Dominions, will humbly follow his ex
ample.

The King of Siam, who reigns at present, A Character
about fifty years of Age. He is without con
tradiction, the greatest Prince that ever governed
that State. He is somewhat under the middle
Stature, but bright and well shaped. He hath
an engaging Air, a sweet and obliging carriage,
especially to Strangers. And amongst them par
cularly to the French. He is active and brisk,
an enemy of Mynets and lassads which seems to be

Q. 5.
A Voyage to Siam.  

Book V.  

By the sharpness of his Wit, he had discovered the errors of the Religion of his Ancestors. And he does not believe an annihilated God, according to the Popular opinion, or as some of their Doctors say, a God, who weary of governing the Heavens, plagues himself to repose, and for ever bares himself in the forlornness of what passes in the world, nor a thousand other Superstitions preached by the Telleques, who are the Preachers and Priests of the Kingdom. On the contrary, he believes that God is Eternal, that his Providence continually governs the World and disposes of all things. To the fame immortal God he often makes his Prayers, and implores his assistance with most profound Reverence at least twice a Day, for two hours time, in the Morning after he is awaked at Night before he goes to rest. The Pope having sent him two Pictures, one of our Saviour, and the other of the Blessed Virgin, he hath a singular veneration for them, and as a sign thereof, hath placed them in a very high place of his Chamber far above him, and never speaks of them but with honour and respect.  

The Embassy which the King sent to him, if it hath not determined him to embrace Christianity, hath at least made him reflect and consider. As he has an extraordinary esteem for the wisdom of the most Christian King, so when the Lord Cufface explained to him the reasons that moved that great Monarch to send the Ambassador to him, he seemed affected therewith, and it is known that he hath many times reflected thereupon since. There are considerations that should excite those who may read these memorials, to pray to God for the Conversion of that Prince, which would be attended with Q 3  

So delightful to the Princes of the East, and which they look upon as the greatest Prerogative of their Crown. This Prince, on the contrary, is always either in the Woods, hunting Elephants, or in his Palace minding the Affairs of his Kingdom. He is no lover of War, because it ruins his People whom he tenderly loves; but when his Subjects revile, or that neighbouring Princes offer him the least affront, or transgress the bounds of the respect that’s due to him; there is no King in the East that takes a more conspicuous revenge, nor appears more passionate for glory.  

Some great men of his Kingdom having rebelled, and having been openly supported by the Forces of three Kings, whole Territories envying the Kingdom of Siam. He attacked those Prisons to break it, that they were obliged to abandon the Rebels to his wrath. He would know everything, and having a pregnant and piercing Wit, he easily is Master of what he has a mind to learn. He is magnanimous, generous, and as true a friend as can be imagined. These are the great qualities which acquire him the confidence of his Neighbours, the fear of his Enemies, the esteem and respect of his Subjects that’s nothing short of admiration. He hath never been given to those vices which are so common to the Princes of the East, may be hath severely punished the most considerable Mandarins, and principal Officers of the Crown, for being too much addicted to their pleasures: So that the most invincible obstacle to the Conversion of Idolatrous Princes, is not to be found in him, I mean, the immoderate love of Women.
with the Conversion of an innumerable multitude of People, and which without doubt would go to our holy Law the neighbouring Princes, we admire the conduct and parts of the King himself.

There lay great obligation upon us to this Monarch, for all the marks of esteem and regard will wheresoever he was pleased to honour us, and we are glad we have the occasion of publishing the same, from the time that the Lord Confluence made him fable of our ways and the particulars that put us upon all things, that Prince foresaw in us all occasions, notwithstanding the bad pretensions that some endeavoured to give him of our fail. The Lord Confluence ordered not to offer himself to the best advantage the extraordinary good will, the King of France hath for our company, and that's the thing that contributed most to make us merit his favour. It is an Example of great influence upon the mind of the King of France, and to heathen, he hath by obliging cares intimate to us that he will imitate it, and hath considered us of his Royal protection, and that we should never fail of a safe refuge in his Kingdom.

So soon as we arrived at Laos we began to make observations, and especially such as might be useful in order observing exactly the Eclipse of the Moon, which was to happen on the Eleventh of December. We could not all do make use of our instruments for these operations; besides all the while we were at Laos, the City and Country about were so overthrown, that we had no place to fix them upon. Nay and therefore too where we judged being only of Wood, the last event made
Book V. A Voyage to Siam.

made it to fluke, that our Perpendulums and Quadrants were thereby wholly disorder'd.

December the first, and seventh we observed by Observation, the Astronomical Ring of Mr. Bassett, that the Variation of the Needle was two degrees twenty Minutes towards the West. This observation was constantly alike during those two days.

The ninth of the same Month by the heights taken of the same object of the Sun, Morning and Evening the true hour of Noon by the Perpendulum with Seconds, was 12 h. 35. 36.

The variation of the Needle by the Parallelisk Engine of the New Compass was observed.

One time 16. 16. min. only
Another 13. 41. min.
Another 37. min.
Another 38. min.

That variation was found by taking several times Morning and Evening the height of the Sun, and every time observing the Azimuth of the Needle still continuing upon the Line of the South and North.

In the last Audience that his Majesty gave the Ambassador, he told him that he would take it well that we made the observation of the first Eclipse in his presence. Some days after he commanded the Lord Clarendon to acquaint us with the honour he intended to put upon us. For that effect they pitched upon a Royal house called New-Pagham a short League from Levis-Etlingende, not far from the Forrest where the King was a hunting of Elephants. The Lord Clarendon carried us to view the place two days before the Eclipse, Q. 4.
A Voyage to Siam.

Book V.

that's to say the fifth of December. A more com-

cvenient place could not have been chosen; we saw
the heavens on all hands, and had room enough
to place our instruments. Having put all things
in order we came back to Lavo.

Next day December the tenth, by the elevation
of the same border of the sun, taken in the morn-
ing between nine and ten o'clock, and in the even-
ing between two and three, the true hour
of noon by the same pendulum with seconds
was 12 h. 2. 31.

The variation of the Needle by the Parallel Engine.

One time 2.8 min. 11.1 min.
Another 2.3 min.
Another 2.1 min.

Towards the West.

In the sequel we shall examine whether or no
the Needle of the Astronomical Ring decline no
much towards the West, as it is very probable;
for if so, then something is to be deduced from
the variation of the Cape of Good Hope, which we
found to be eleven degrees and a half towards the
West, and the pilots with their compasses only
nine degrees.

The same day the king invited my Lord Aus-
 baffador, to come and see the illumination that
were made for the hunting of elephants. It was
his Majesty's pleasure that we also should be there;
and did us the honour about four in the afternoon
to send for elephants with the Bassadors Lieu-
teant to be our guide. We sent to our telescope
and a spiral pendulum that went
very well, and was set by the sun. For we ever

Book V. A Voyage to Siam.

to observe the Eclipse there according to the
Orders. The King's method of the hunting was in
the manner that I am now about to relate.

About forty or forty-five thousand men, A description
had surrounded and made an enclosure in the Woods and upon the Mountains of a large square,
whereof the two great sides might very well be
ten Leagues a piece, and the other two, each
three Leagues. All that vast extent was bordered
by two rows of Fires, which ranged all round
upon two Lines at four or five Steps distance one
from another. These Fires are kept burning all
night long with the wood of the Forest, and
burn seven or eight foot high in the air, being
supported by little square Platforms raised upon
four Stakes, which was the cause that they would
be all seen at once and very far off too. Kept me in the dark the finest sight and loveliest illu-
mination that ever I saw. Great Lanthorn placed
at convenient distances made the distinction of quarts,
which were commanded by different heads,
with a certain number of Elephants of war and
Hunters armed like Soldiers. Ever present
and then they fired some small Field Pieces that by that
noit and the Fires they might frighten the Ele-
phants, that should attempt to force their pas-
sage through as they had done some days before,
because that circumstance had not been used.

There was a very steep mountain within the Pre-
cincts of the Hunting; but that being looked upon
to be inaccessible to those creatures, they had
the time before neglected to secure it by Fires,

Guards and Artillery. However ten or twelve of
them escaped that way, and for that purpose made
use of a very surprising expedient; filling thens
elves

Page 147 of 196
A Voyage to Siam. Book V.

silver by their Trunks to one of the Trees that were upon the side of that very steep Mountain, they made a Skip to the Root of the next, and in the same manner clambered from Tree to Tree with incredible efforts, until they got to the top of the Mountain, from whence they ranged themselves in the Woods. What had happened at that time, was the cause that nothing was neglected at this hour, that so one might any more escape. The King upon his return from hunting, found the French drawn up in a Line at the entry into the Forest, and mounted on Elephants. He eyed them very much, and took pleasure to be men of so good a mood. He had judiciously given Audience to the Ambassadors, which had been pretty long. About the end of it, he sent for the Consulier de Fontain, an old Officer, who had gained reputation on many occasions. The Lord Consulier had prayed the Ambassador to leave him at Siam with the King his Master. Nay his Majesty thought fit to demand him of the Ambassador, and made him a Present of a very lovely Statue, as a Mark that he received him into his Service. He added to the Present besides, a Veil of a flowered Stuff, with Gold Buttons. In the meantime it was late, and the King was gone home; however we alighted in a pleasant place, where a splendid Collation of all sorts of Sweets, Meats and Fruit was prepared for us. My Lord Ambassador drank the King of Siam's Health in a large Cup of beaten Gold which he had presented to him. The Lid and Salver of it were of the same Metal. This place was presently encamped with Elephants of War and Fire.  

Book V. A Voyage to Siam.  
feature us from Tigers and other wild Beasts, that were encased within the Precincts. Afterward the Ambassador took his way back to Laos, and the Lord Consulier conducted us freight to the Castle of T'oes-pontam, where the King was already come to be present at the Observation of the Eclipse. About Nine of the Clock we came to the side of the Canal, which leads to the Castle, and there we found one of the King's Palaces, which had waited for us a long while. This Canal is very broad and above a League in length. It was lighted on both sides with an infinite number of Jacks Fish as were mentioned before, which all together in the obscurity of the Night rendered a very charming prospect. When we were got within half a quarter of a League of the Castle, our Watermen, who till then had pulled hard and made much noise in rowing, began to row so softly, that we hardly heard the noise of their Oars. They told us, that we must either hold our peace, or speak very low. The truth is, when we landed, all was so quiet, though there were a great many Soldiers and Murtherers thereabouts, that we thought we were in some remote Solitudes. The Reverence they have for the King's Person, makes them observe that profound silence in all places where he is. We presently fixed several Telescopes upon some Props that had been ruffled to support them. It did not require much time to adjust our Instruments; so that we took Boat again an hour after, and went to spend part of the Night in the House of the Lord Consulier, which is almost an hundred paces from the Palace.

When
When we were to step aboard at the foot of the Wall which is on the other side of the Canal, there was danger of being pricked by a line of Caltraps; for there were a great many iron Chains laid in length at half a foot distance from one another, and thee make up the breadth of the ground between the Canal and the Wall. They are armed with a double row of thick iron Spikes; they are every night, without fail, fixed round the Cattle, and serve to hinder any approaching to it. At our coming aboard, the Lord Confiante gave us very timely notice to take heed to our selves, having observed that one of our Fathers was about to step on land. He sent for the Office of the Guard, and ordered him to take up those Caltraps, which hindered our coming aboard. Having then got as near to Wall as we could, we walked in a little path two feet broad, which is left free, for making the Rounds in the Night time, and about Eleven o’Clock at Night we arrived at the House of the Lord Confiante.

They begin the Observation of the Eclipse before the King.

Having resided three or four hours there, we re-embarked and went to the Gallery where the Observation was to be made. It was then about Three o’Clock in the Morning. So soon as we were come, we put all things in readiness. We had already threw his Majesty, by the Lord Confiante’s Mediation, a great Figure of an Eclipse, wherein one might see the Moon entering by little and little under the Shadow, with the Imagination of the Spot; and his Majesty seemed to be pleased with it. We prepared a very good Telescope for him five foot long, in the Window of a Room that looked into the Gallery where

Book V. "A Voyage to Siam."

where we were. The Penumbra being pretty far advanced, notice was sent to the King, who immediately came to that Window. We were sitting upon Persian Carpets, lined at the Tele- scopes, others at the Peristyle, and others were to write down the time of the Observation. We saluted his Majesty with a profound inclination of Body, and then began to observe,

After Midnight, H. M. S. E.

The Beginning of the Penumbra, 02 33 02
The Penumbra thicker, 03 01 03
The Penumbra very thick, 03 12 03
The dreadful Begin of the Ed. 00 15 08
The certain Beginnings, 00 19 00
Recess, 00 19 48
The Beginning of Grimaldi, 00 21 34
The End of Grimaldi, 00 22 36
Kepier, 00 29 32
Gaffendi, 00 32 35
Engelsi, 00 36 40
The Beginning of Capricorn, 00 37 40
The Middle of Capricorn, 00 39 00
The Beginning of Aries, 00 48 25
The Middle of Aries, 00 49 05
The End of Aries, 00 49 24
Mintons, 00 58 45
St. Denis, 00 59 49
Founis, 00 62 11
Premonitions auctor, 00 07 40
The Beginning of Mars Chrislam, 00 14 39
The Middle of Mars Chrislam, 00 17 45
The End of Mars Chrislam, 00 19 18
The total Imagination.
A Voyage to Siam. Book V.

The King expressed a particular Satisfaction, seeing all the Sorts of the Moon in the Telescope, and especially perceiving that the Type of Min that was made at the Observatory of Paris, agreed so well with it. He put several Questions to me during the Eclipse; as for instance, Why did the Moon appear revered in the Telescope? Why was the part of the Moon eclipsed, till to be seen? What was it at Paris? For what cause Observations made by Astronomers in remote Countries be useful? &c. Whilst we satisfied all his Questions, one of the Officers of his House brought us an hundred Silver Buttons for Curles, and as many Clocks of carved Satin, wherein the King presented us in a most obliging manner. He had a mind to look in a Telescope twelve foot long, which Father Flinney made for him, and we presently carried it to him. He desired us to rise and stand in his Presence, and would look in the Telescope after us; but we must needs sit to his Point when we presented it to him. They who know what Respect and Honour the Kings of Spain expect from those who are in their Presence, have spoken of that Favour to us, as of a very rare Thing.

His Majesty would then know which of the Fathers was to return to France; and being told that it was I, he told me very obligingly, that seeing he was sending Ambassadors to France, who were not well acquainted with the Customs and Manners of Europe, he trusted much to the good Councils that I should give them, and especially the good Offices that I would render them by means of our Friends; that he had ordered them to demand of the King of France twelve Marquises of our Society, and for that end to address themselves to Father de la Chaise, that he might second their Demand; in short, that he made no doubt but that I would avail in particular to do what lay in my power in managing that Affair. At the same time the Lord High Chamberlain, in his Majesty's Presence presented me with two lovely Crucifixes in a large Gold Box. The Cross was of Maffie Gold, the Cross of Tobacco, which is made of a mixture of seven parts of Gold, and three parts more of a Metal as precious as Gold itself, the Foot was of Silver. His Majesty told me, that the bigness was designed for Father de la Chaise the King's Confessor, whose Merit and Fidelity in the Service of his Master, he knew by the Character that the Lord Chamberlain had given of him. Then he fell a praising the Zeal and Diligence with which his own Ministers, whom he always called our Brothers, telling us, that he had received much good Service from him on all occasions that ever presented. After that his Majesty commanded me to tell the Father Confessor, when in his Name I presented him that Crucifix, that he could not render him more acceptable Service, nor more useful to his State, than in obtaining for him twelve Mathematicians from the King; that I might allure them, that before their Arrival, there would be an Observatory, a House and a Church for them at Louis as well as at Paris. At the same time he enjoyed the Lord Confession to get them forthwith with bails, and with abundance of the Fathers to chuse Places for them in the two Towns I have been speaking of. As for the other Crucifix, I freely
A Voyage to St. Ives. Book V.

freely give it you, and he, with a most gracious Look, that it may serve you for a faithful Companion during all your Voyage. Let me have News from you as oft as you can; and above all things, endeavour to return back again with the first opportunity. I beseech Divine Providence, that takes care of the Conduct of the Universe, to give you a prosperous Voyage. At length, having recommended to my Care what befits had engrossed me, and what he was told by others from him, he again wished me a speedy Return, and so went away, expressing the pleasure and satisfaction that he had received during the two hours that he had done in the Honour to be present at our Observations. No body was near his Person all the while he was with us, but the Lord Copleman, the Lord Chamberlain, and a Gentleman of his Bed-chamber. So many Favours to which he behoved us to answer upon his Spot, hindered us from observing the immersion of several Spots. After the King was gone, the Lord Copleman stayed alone with us; and having well remarked the Circle of the Shadow, and the Circulus in the Telescope, he observed together with us the rest of the Phases until the total immersion.

From thence we returned to the House of the Lord Copleman, where we expected the emergence of the Moon, which appeared above a quarter an hour before Sun-rising, that is to say, at five clock and six minutes, the beginning of the Emission was at six h. 11. 1. 6. Sec. or rather 6 h. 12. m. and to that Observation it was concluded we must hold: It is true, the Vapor of the Horizon hindered us a little. The Moon was

Book V. A Voyage to St. Ives.

fill to be seen near the Horizon at 6 h. 22. m. 6 Sec. but soon after the Jet, and the Sun rose. The Pendulum was set at One a-clock after Noon, and from Three a-clock in the Afternoon the day before left but three Minutes and three Seconds. The Hours set down in the Observation are according to the clock not rectified. Thus the hours of Noon by the great Pendulum, observed the Nineteenth and Tenth of December, 1687, and the lab of the little one in respect of the great, according to which it was set the Tenth of March, at Three a-clock in the Afternoon, shew that the little Pendulum at 4 h. 22. m. 45. Sec, after Midnight, next day went no flow by a Minute, and that the true Hour was 4 h. 23 m. 45. Sec.

I have communicated these Observations to the Members of the Academy Royal of Sciences, and it was found that the total immersion having been observed the Eleventh of that Instant,

At London, H. M. S. I. 04 23 45
At Paris by Mr. Caffin, H. M. S. 10 49 20
The Difference of Merid., H. M. S. 06 34 13

At 6 h. 9. m. the same little Pendulum went too flow 1 m. 29. Sec. the hour then was 6 h. 10. m. 25. Sec at that time the Emission began, as it appeared at London. The same Emission was observed at the Observatory of Paris by Monsieur Caffin.

The Difference of Meridians, H. M. S. 11 36 18
Re 05 34 07
By the Observations of the Lunar Eclipse, February 21, 1682, the Longitude of Siam was found to be of 171 degrees, which exactly agree with their new Observations.

It is a strange thing that there should be modern Maps that put the Longitude of Siam in the 145 degree, whereas the great Map of the Observatory made long before these Observations, gives it 171 degrees, within a degree or little more of these Observations.

A German Astronomer, who was at Lahore, had foretold this Eclipse to a quarter of an hour or more; but he was mighty mistaken as to its duration of it, saying that the Eclipses would not appear above the horizon till after the Sun was up. Some days before, we had a Conference with that German; but since we understood not the Sian-Language, we could not learn any thing of the manner how he calculates Eclipses. He proposed to us some Questions about the Sun and Stars, which were fully answered, as for instance, in what Sign the Sun was, and how many fixed Stars we reckoned, &c. He asked us, what we had read in some China-Books; we told him there always appeared a fixed and very sparkling Star perpendicularly over the Palace of the Emperor of China at Poyuan. We told him it was a Fable; and it was no hard matter to make him of the same mind. He was of the Opinion of the Siamese Toleration, who made an Apology for the Tradition of their Country.

Book V. A Voyage to Siam.

give and teach, that when the Moon is eclipsed, a Dragon devours her, and calls her up again. When it is objected to them, how it comes to pass then that we know and foretell the very moment of the Eclipse, how great it will be, how long it is to last; how comes it to pass that sometimes there is but part of the Moon eclipsed, and sometimes all of it? They dryly answer, that this Dragon has his Meals regulated, that we know the time of them, and the measure likewise of his Appetite, which is sometimes greater and sometimes less. One had as good say nothing at all, as to offer to prove that those all are Chimerical Notions, for they willfully pervert in their illusion. To conclude this Matter, I shall here subjoin the Letter which the Lord Conclave wrote to Father de la Chaize, wherein that Minister hath been pleased to give him an Account of what pass at the last Audience which the King gave us upon occasion of the Eclipse; it hath been translated out of Portuguese.

Most Reverend Father,

I cannot expect to your most Reverend Patronage the toy that I have felt this Year, and I hope you will not take it ill, if I give you a particular Account of the Grounds and Causes of it. The first was the Arrival of his most Christian Majesty's Ambassador at this Court, which hath furnisht me the Occasion that I am sufficiently defined of rendering to you Prince on the Person of his Ambassador all the Services I am capable of. The second was the great and public Matter which that Ambassador came here to manage; and lastly, the coming of Sir in my Brethren, whom the most Christian
A Voyage to Siam. Book V.

I have presented the Father Superior and my other Brothers who are come with me, to the King my Master: His Majesty did me the honour to receive them with extraordinary Marks of Affection. He hath also honoured them with his Presence, having no body near him but four of his chief Mandarins, when they offered the Salute which happened the Eleventh of the Month of December. During all that time, his Majesty was not four feet distant from the Fathers who were making use of their Instruments, and along with as great freedom as if they had been in the Observatories of Paris. Nay, the King had the goodness to call the Father Superior to him, and to order him to sit in his Throning, to the end his Majesty might the more easily observe taking the Instrument out of the Father's hand, as if he had from his Friend. During that Observation, he did the Fathers the honour toவூது விடுமல்லம் முதல் விடுமல்லப் போன்று நேரில் நிலவுகின்றது, என்றும் உங்களுடைய வேளையையும் இரண்டு விளக்கம் இல்லையால் உங்கள் வேளையையும் கையேற்றிக் கொள்ள வேண்டும். என்றும் உங்களுடைய வேளையையும் இரண்டு விளக்கம் இல்லையால் உங்கள் வேளையையும் கையேற்றிக் கொள்ள வேண்டும்.
A Voyage to Siam.

Book V.

not fifty or more be able to do in the space of twenty years?

I have given the Ambassador of the King my Mas-

ter some Credence of this Country, to be presented to

my Name to your Patrony. I pray you to accept of

them, and is shall be to me a very occasion of joy to

receive your Orders, and to render you my services in

all things that depend on me. I commend my self to

your Holy Sacrifices, and am, with all due Respect and

Friendship,

Most Reverend Father,

Your most Humble,

and Obedient

Servant and Brother,

CONSTANTINE PAULKON

The way of catching Ele-

phants.

After the King had observed the Eclipse with

us in the manner I have related, he invited us to

participate in the Diversion which that day he
gave in the Forest, for taking the Elephants

which were there kept esconced. We made ne-

edy to set out about seven of the Clock. Then

we were told that my Lord Ambassador was in

court, and that the King was coming out of his

Palace. Preceding the Ambassador arrived

on Horse-back with all his Retinue, the Bishop

of Metropolit, the Abbot of Lesmes, and Master

Vaquez attended him. No sooner had all alighted

from their Horses, and mounted the Elephant

that were prepared for us, but the King appeared

attended by a great number of Mandarins mounted

on Elephants of War. We followed, and ent

ered about a League into the Wood, as far as

the Enclosure where the wild Elephants were. It

was a square Park of about three or four hundred

Geometrical Paces, paled in by great Snakes; how-

ever large Openings were left at convenient

Ditches, and within there were fourteen Ele-

phants of all Siz. So soon as the Company

came, they made a Ring of about an hundred El-

phant of War placed round the Park, to hin-

der the Wild ones from breaking through the

Paliado; we were behind this Ring, and near to

the King. Twelve of the strongest of the tame

Elephants were first in within the Precincts of

the Park, every one of them carrying two Men with

great Ropes and running Nooses, whereof the

ends were made fast to the Elephants they rode

upon. They presently made up to the Elephant

they had a mind to catch, who finding himself

purpos'd, offered at the Barrier to break through

and make his Escape; but all the way was

blocked up by Elephants of War, by whom they

were forced back within the Enclosure again, and

as they ran to and again within that Space, the

Hunters, who were mounted on tame Ele-

phants, threw their Nooses so exactly upon the

places where the Beasts were set for their Foot,

that they never failed catching of them; indeed,

they were all taken in the space of an hour.

They afterwards tied every wild Elephant,

and on each side of him put a tame one, which

were to be left a Fortnight with him, that by their

means he might be tamed.
Amongst that Herd of wild Elephants, there were two or three very young and little ones. The King said he would send one of them to the Duke of Burgundy; but confessing that the Duke of Augus might be envious and take Exception thereto, he added that he would also send him one left, that so there might be no Dispute betwixt them.

When the Hunting was over, the King told the Ambassador, that they had never had better Sport in so short a time, that Providence had so ordered it for his sake, and that therefore they ought to give God thanks. He then prayed him to leave with him Monseur de la Mare. The Ambassador presented him to him, and his Majesty professedly made the Lord Conclave give him a Veil of Cloth of Silver with Gold Button. Monseur de la Mare is a very able Ingenious, and a very honest Man: He hath long served both by Sea and Land; having from his Youth applied himself to the Mathematicks, where he hath made great Progress. He is very skilful in Navigation, Fortification, and Geometry. On that Occasion all the Gentlemen took their Leave of the King, who wished them a Happy Voyage, and expressed himself with condescending Civility towards them.

The King returned to Three-paddies, and the Ambassador to Lyman. The King came there also in the Evening, that next day he might give the Ambassador his Audience of Leave. December the Twelfth, about eight of the Clock in the Morning, an Officer who is a Mandar in of the first Rank, came with a pompous Train to wait upon the Ambassador from his House to Audience.
A Voyage to Siam.

Book V.

ried by a great many Monaroches of all the Orders. I stayed with the Lord Constance till the next day, and when I was to part from our Father, it troubled me extremely to leave them. The Father Superior and other two would needs go along with me, and wait upon my Lord Ambassador on Shipboard.

Our Water-men rowed all night long, and December the Fourteenth, about seven a Clock in the Morning, we arrived at the Ambassador's House in Siam. His Servants were employed in putting on board the China and other Parchment of his Palace, which the King had presented him with. Before I left the City, I had a long Discourse with Father Sawyer and Father Fano. These Fathers have learnt to suffer without complaining, and as to that point they have a store of Confidence that makes them observe Measures, that the Ministry Morality could not always comply with. They only hinted to me that they had been surpriz'd, that the Jesuits of the Island should be accused of taking Money (as it is practised in Parishes) for Administering, Baptizing, &c. being an infinite Number of People that had their Wives to the contrary, and they protest to me before God that never any thing had been done, that might in the least alter the Rule of our Institution. I had long desired an Opportunity of being clearer as to a Matter of Fact that had made a Noise, but I had forgot to do it till then. I asked them if it was true, that a certain Minister of Religion, called Fenn, was an Apostate Jesuit, as it was given out. They made me anser, that he had never been either of our Company, nor of any other religious Society, which the King sometimes, which he had acknowledged to several Persons, and to Father Fano himself at Bangkok; and that perhaps the thing that had given occasion to the Report, was the Conformity in Name which he had with a Jesuit, who is also called Fenn, and who had been formerly mentioned, from whence ground had been taken to confound the two into one Person. Would to God that the Original of such kind of Reports were only to be ascribed to a bare Mistake; for how many such have been of late years published in certain Licles that have flown about in Holland? Distance of Place hath in this favoured the Malicious, and the natural Indulgence or Interest that Men have to give Credit to that that's Evil, has been the cause that some have believed it. Having viewed things at nearer distance, I have with humble Submission adored Providence, that suffers Men sometimes to laure out and speak the worst of those, of whom, had they been just, they might have fled the wheel. They ought to consider that very far from injuring those whom they would destroy, they only exercise their Patience, keep them humble, and hinder them from receiving in this World a weak compunction for the Labours which deserve a more solid Reward in Heaven, which is a great Kindness to them; whereas all reflect upon Religion, which is exposed to the Cruelty of Hereticks, and the Contempt of Infidels.

We parted from Siam the Fourteenth of December, about four or five a Clock in the Evening from Siam. The Lord Constance who would wait upon the Ambassador as far as the Bar, followed him in a fine boat and princely Barge, which the King sometimes
time since had obliged him to take, and just find another as that which carried the Ambassador. The Train consisted of twenty Baloons of State, which went as low as the Seaboard, where he was received the Day of his Entry. As soon as they arrived there, they drew up and made a Lane, according to their Quality, that the Ambassador Balloon might pass between them, and to the Minister who were on board of them took their Leave and returned. We came to Banock about four a Clock in the Morning, where the Lord Constance prayed the Ambassador to stay till next Day, that he might view the Fortifications of the Citadel, and give his Judgment of them. Whilst we were at Banock, a Frigate of the King of Siam’s part that way, carrying the Letter which his Majesty wrote to the King of France. The Letter was in a Gold Box shaped like a Cone, and this Box was put up in another bigger Silver Box, which also was enclosed within a third of Japan Wood varnished, wrapped up in a piece of rich Silk stuff flowered with Gold. All this was in a gift Pyramid placed aloft on the Stern of the Frigate, with many Paraffins to cover it. When the Frigate put by with its Convoy of Balloons of State, the Governors of Places that lay upon the River, made a Discharge of all their Artillery, and every one of them waited upon the Letter as far as their Government reached, receiving it from one another with the same Honours and Ceremonies.

Sunday, December the Sixteenth, the Ambassador arrived at the Bar, and the same Day about seven of the Clock at Night went on board the Canary. As I had been all along in the Baloon of the Lord Constance, so he would have me to go on board of one of his Frigates at the Mouth of the River, and lay with him there two Days to dispatch some Balloons. There he gave me a Letter to the King, which I have hid in the Hoard to present to his Majesty. We afterwards weighed and came to an Anchor again near the Ambassadors Ship, to do him the Honour that he had never done to any before. The King of Siam’s Ambassadors, who were not as yet come on board the Canary, desired the Ambassador to send them the Long-boat to carry on board their Master’s Letter. They were and staid it from the Frigate, and when they were come to the Ships side, the second Ambassador put the Pyramid wherein it was upon his Shoulders, and so came on board, no body daring to touch it. It was placed upon aloft on the Stern with the Paraffins, and one and twenty Guns were fired at the Ceremony. Nevertheless the Ambassadors were prevailed upon to carry it into their Cabin, because being so placed, it would hinder the working of the Ship. The Ambassador and Lord Constance visited one another on board their Ships, with the usual Salutes; and the last time that the Lord Constance came on board the Canary to take his Leave of the Ambassador, they gave one another great marks of Mutual Friendship, and parted with Grief. Our three Fathers who were come so far, returned with the Lord Constance and Bishop of Medinaceli, leaving me troubled and pensive, but I endeavoured to moderate my Sorrow by the hope of seeing them again within a few years. When all were gone into the Cha- loop, the Lord Constance called me and gave me a Chapel.
A Voyage to Siam. Book V.

So soon as we came to an Anchor before Bang-
tam, the Ambassador sent M. de Cibin, Lieute-
nant of the Ship to make a Complement to the
Governor, not doubting but that he would
come off with better Grace than he did the time
before, and the rather, that he was not ignorant
of the Civilities that the General of Battavia had
thrown the Ambassador, but we were mistaken.
Monsieur Cibin could not speak to the Governor,
who, they said, was sick, and bid the Governor
of the Fort tell him, that they would send on
board fresh Provisions. This Promit amounted
no more but the sending of two or three
Bullocks, with an Excuse that there was no more
to be had. In the Evening came a Man, who
pretended to be sent from the Governor, and
demanded Money for the Bullocks, which it was
thought the Governor had preferred to my Lord
Ambassador. That Mellenger was used as he de-
served, and had an Answer given him to carry
to the Governor, sutable to such a clownish
and uncivil Behaviour. So next day we made
Sail towards the Cape of Goode-hope.

We had the best Luck imaginable in passing
the Straights of the Sound, which is a very dif-
ficult Passage to through, because of contrary Winds
that commonly reign there in that Season. But
God was graciously pleased to send us most excel-
lent Weather, which in a few Hours put us out
of all Danger. We had a more particular In-
stance of his Divine Providence three days after.
Our Pilots had a mind to keep thirty or forty
Leagues to the Southward of the Isle Mado, and
thought they had passed their Course according-
ly, when about break of day Monsieur de Cibin

Page 158 of 196
A Voyage to Siam.

Book V.

The Day following, March the Thirteenth, the Wind being abated, we came to an Anchor in the Bay, amongst seven great Dutch Ships, that made up the East-India Fleet that was to return to Europe, to Boston, as three or four Ships more, which they daily expected, were come to the Cape. The Ambassador sent a Compliment to the Governor of the Fort, who received it as kindly as the time before, when we past that way. We furnished the Fort with seven Guns, and they returned us a Gun for Gun. Whilst we were taking in Water, and providing other necessaries, the Governor, who had asked News of the six Jesuits whom he had seen the Year before. He made me many offers of Services, offering me a House, if I would stay a little, and that many of his Followers had suffered Death, and other caitiff of his Britannick Majesties

Mercy.
A Voyage to Sinam. Book V.

Voyage to Sinam. Book V.

Yeard to be laid there, that in a Night on two or three may be caught, as will taze to feed a whole Ship's Company, consisting of four hundred Men, for a Fortnight's time. These Turtles are of an extraordinary bulk, and in the Evening after Sunset, when they come ashore to lay their Eggs, Men turn as many of them as they please to take, upon their backs, but the Sea-horse is full of them, and in that condition they leave them till next day, when they come and carry them on Board in Boats. We made that Isle, which appears at a great distance by a high Hill, the nineteenth of April, about four of the Clock in the Afternoon, we had a good Wind, and we should have had time if we had put into the Road, and therefore the Ambassador would not stop there.

We put the Line at the first Meridian, the seventh eleven of April, and from that Time forward, till the tenth of May, we had very fair Wind, but then met with a strong contrary Wind. Next day towards the Evening, we were much surprised to make the Isle of Cape on head of us, which is the westernmost Isle of the group. Our Pilots thought we had been near an hundred Leagues beyond those Islands. I have read in many Journals, and learnt from several able Seamen, that Men are many times out in that Country, and that they never fail to make the Islands, when they think they have pass them. This is a sign that in those Places the Currents are well with great Rapidity. So that Men should fall with much Circumpection upon their Return from so
A Voyage to Siam.

John, we came to an Anchor in the Road of

Book V. A Voyage to Siam.

Pride, that they may not fall into so confiden-
tible a Mistake, which may prove to be of

Consequence.

From the eleventh, it blew to fierce a Storm
that we were forced to furl all our Sails.
and to lay a-try under one Course. That
lasted not long, and we stood away Eastward.
One day, as we were falling with all Sails
drawn, and were in hopes soon to make the
Land of Ceylon, because we were already got
in the Soundings, a Sea-man upon the Watch
cried out, that we were about to run upon a Rock.
It was late, and the Darkness of the Night cre-
ated our Fear, occasioned by so present
Danger; but it was over in a trice, when in
head of that pretended Rock, we found a great
Fisher Boat at an Anchor. Had not we told
in the very nick of time, we had been lost
of her. The poor Men on board were so
alarmed, that they fell kept crying with all the
force, that we would take pity of them, though
we were already at a pretty good distance from
them.

Next day we met a Boat, that afforded us
we were but eight Leagues from Ceylon. The
News rejoiced all the Ships Company, who
was encircled next day by the light of the
Island. When we made it, we dropped on
the Sill we could, that we might haste to
the Island; but it being again Tide, and the
Wind failing us, we were forced to come
to an Anchor between the black Stones and the
main Land, in six and twenty Fathom Water,
on sandy Ground. Next day, the eighteenth
A VOYAGE TO SIAM.

The Sixth BOOK.

The Manners and Religion of the Siamese.

I will say nothing but what I have seen with my own eyes, or what I have learned from the Lord Confessors and some others very intelligent Persons, that I may not impose upon the public by false or uncertain reports. This wise advice I had from that Minister all the while I had the honour to be with him, who gave me to understand that some men had given abroad memoirs of great many things that are not much to be trusted. So I shall speak nothing of Tomagaon and Cheklong, because of three perfumes who lived
A Voyage to Siam. Book VI

The Kingdom of Siam reaches from the point of Malacca to the Kingdoms of Pegu and Laos which bound it on the North side. It lies between the Indian Sea to the West, and the China Sea to the East, so that it would seem to make only a Peninsula. The Provinces that lie up to the Country towards the North are for the little less than a Geographical Map itself, and so hot that the boundaries are not very exact. The

p. 264-Figure XXVII
Book VI. A Voyage to Siam.

The King of Siam intimated to our Fathers that he wished to have an exact Map of his own Dominions and the Kingdoms about, having bid the Lord Castlemaine tell us, that he would give us Letters of Recommendation to the Princes his Neighbours, to the end we might have the liberty to Travel over their Countries, and make an exact Description of them. I do not think that since my departure our Fathers have had time to obey the Orders of the King of Siam, because they were in haste to be gone for China, waiting only for the opportunity of a Passage. That will be the first work we shall undertake so soon as we have learnt the Language.

This Kingdom is divided by many Rivers, and a Description watered with frequent Rains, which for six months of the year and more, overflow all the Country, that abounds in Rice, Fruits and Cattel. The Houses are commonly of Wood, and raised upon Pillars because of the Inundations, without any thing of the Grandeur or Regularity that is to be found in the Houses of Europe. The Chinese and Mahacs have built several pretty square Houses in Siam. The wealth of the Country appears in the Temples, by the many works of Gold, and most lovely gildings, which are the Ornaments of them, these Pагods being, besides, of a singular structure, and in very great number. They are in no want of Timber, and they have some excellently good for building of Ships.

The Capital City is called Siam; and that is the name the Portuguese have given it. The Si-
man call it Suray or Sur, and our English call it Siam, or Siam. Siam is signifies excellent Town. Their
Hitherto call it alGovt. hoplegips or man at he by.
The meaning of that is, Angelical, admirable, and extraordinary Town, and they call it Anga.
Retal, because they think it impregnable to the
Sence all Nations are well received at Anga, and
that People are suffered to live there. In the fair
Exercise of their Religion, there are some of al
most all Nations in that Country. The Anga
are the greatest Traders there, and besides the
Commodities of their own deal also in those of their:
The King of Anga deals Ships to Trade at home,
Abroad, Jonah and other places. But the Anga
being no better at Navigation than the rest,
people of the East, Europeans have the Sailing
of their Vessels. He had also several Islands
are Anga Vessels, and are Manured by Greeks
But then that Nation long that they have had the
art of the Compass above these two thousand
years, yet they come very far. But of the En
a and the art of Navigation. They have no
other Instraments for Sailing but the Lead or
Sound. They keep reclining so we do, and the
same time upon each a Point of Wind, the
Carron, Mountains which they discover on Land,
der the colors, threaten and mismeasure of the Land, as
other experiences are the Rules they go by.
The Angas are not magnificent in their Ap
par. The inferior sort of People both and
Women are Cloathed much alike. They have a
Leege which is a piece of very haple fluff abou
two cils and a half Leg, and these quarter of an
ell broad. They put this Leage about their
Body, so that it makes as it were, a kind of Cor
reaching from the Girdle below the knees, but
the Women come down as low to the Ankle.

Mandarin qui porte a ma de fer gen.
The women have besides that a piece of white
Benzin, about three ells long which they put about
them in manner of a Scarf to cover the rest of their
body, for that purpose the Men have another Lan-
guin, which they never use but when it is cold, and
when the sun shines too clear. The habits of the
Mandarins when they are in their home dress,
differ only from those of the common people by
the fineness of the stuff. But when they go a-
board they have a Longuine of Silk or painted cloth
six or seven Yoshi-long, which they have the knack
of adjusting to well about their body, that it
reaches no lower than their knee. The Conside-
urable Mandarins have under this Longuine a narrow
pair of drawers; the extremities whereof are Embro-
dered with Gold and Silver. They have also
Velves with Bodies and Sleeves pretty wide. They
have Shoes shaped like the Shoes of the Indi-
ans. On the days of Ceremonies when they are
to appear before the King, they have a Cap of
Bridal starched, which tops into a point like
a Sugar-loaf, and is tied with a flinging under the
Chin. The King gives to some Mandarins accord-
ing to their quality, Crowns of Gold or Silver;
made much after the Shape of the Coronet of
our Dukes and Marquesses, to be put about their
Cap, which is a mark of great distinction.

The Siamese are very good natured and civil,
they live in good intelligence one with another
and they are not wanting in complaisance to
Strangers. The good Conduct of the French,
and especially the wild and virtuous examples
of the Charactere des Chinois, gave them to high a
notion of France, that Mandarins of the best quality
eagerly tied for the honour of going thither in

Page 166 of 196
in quality of the Ambassadors of the King, and in the revenue of those whom he sent to speak generally, there is a great union in families amongst them, and out of principle of tenderness for their Parents and Relations, they account of somewhat of hard heartedness, because we leave ours, and go live far from them in remote Countries, telling us that they may find a need of us. Justice has no less sway among them than friendship and peace. When any Ship is cast away upon their Coast, there is a Law that obliges those who have taken up any thing of the Wreck to bring it to the chief Town, to be afterwards given to those to whom the effects belonged; which is also observed in relation to strangers.

The persuasion they are in, that it is conducive for a man to have his Teeth white like Beefe, makes them take a great deal of pains to blacken them. For that end they make use of a Varnish made for the purpose, which they renew from time to time when it begins to wear off. They may give the colour time to stick on, they eat nothing for some days, and even exercise with Beefe and Arecce. The Beefe we have often spoken of is the leaf of a Tree of the same name, and the Arecce is a fruit much about the biggest and shape of our Acorns. They cut that fruit into four parts, and having mingled it with Linseed Shells, they wrap it up in the Beefe leaf. This mixture is to very favor to them, either because they are accustomed to it, or because of the great effects they feel from it, that all eat of it of what quality, or in what place forever they be. They pretend that it is a Special remedy to relieve the Gums, help digestion, and above all to make the breath sweet.

It is a custom amongst them to prefer Beefe. The property and use of the Beefe and Arecce to all that visit them. Their own Country supplies them with Beefe and Arecce, but they are imported from China and Japan. All the Oriental have a particular esteem for it, because of the great virtues they find to be in it. Their Physicians say, that it is a Sovereign Medicine against the Stone and pains of the Head, that it always expels ; that it clears the Mind, and strengthens the Stomach. In all kinds of Fevers they take it stronger than commonly, when they begin to feel the heat of the Face, and then the Patient covers himself up to sweat, and it has been very often found that this faculty wholly drives away the Fever. In the East they prepare the Tea in this manner, when the water is well boiled, they pour it upon the Beefe which they have put into an Earthen pot proportionably to what they intend to take and the ordinary proportion is as much as one can take up with the Finger and Thumb, for a pint of water) then they cover the Pot until the Leaves are sunk to the bottom of it, and afterward give it about in China, either to be drank as hot as can be without sugar, or cold with a little Sugar-carded in the mouth, and upon that Tea, more boiling water may be poured and it may be made to serve twice. These people drink of it several times a day, but do not think it wholesome to take it fasting.

Of all the Plants of the East the Ginseng is most highly esteemed. There are several kinds of it; some but the best is that which grows in China.
A Voyage to Siam. Book VI,

the Province of Laos, is one of a yellow colour, the fifth or pulp of it smooth, having little threads like hairs. They find of these Roots some that are shaped like a Man, and it is from these they have their name for Giuj in the Chinese Language, signifies a Man, and something sometimes to say, according as it is differently pronounced; because Root being taken feathery or out of leaves, produces quite contrary effects. There is Giuj also in the Kingdom of Laos, may and in Siam too, as some say; but it is not so good as that which grows in Laos. The Chinese Herbal says that this Root grows in the Milan in Low Valleys, and that it must be gathered at the end of Summer, because that which is gathered in the Spring has ten times the virtue.

The Chinese Physicians who make most use of it, affirm that it is a sovereign Remedy for clearing the Blood, and renewing the Strength that has been weakened by long fevers; that he who has that Root in his mouth, will hold out at Labour as long again as he that hath it not; that corpulent people who have a white Stain may take more of it than dry persons who have a healthy Complexion, and whole countenance feebles heat, that it is never to be taken in a glass or cups caused by an internal heat, nor when one hath a Cough or febrile Blood; for preparing of it, they put water into a cup, and having made it boil well, they throw into it Giuj cut into small bits; they cover the cup very close, that the Giuj may be infused, and when the water becomes lukewarm, they drink it alone in the morning fasting. They keep that Giuj and prepare it the same way in the evening as they did in the morning, having that
Book VI. A Voyage to Siam.

that they put but half the quantity of water, and
drink it when it is already a little cold. Then
they dry the Ginseng that hath already served, in
the Sun, and if one pleases, he may again infuse it
in wine and use it. "The quantity of the Ginseng
is proportioned according to the age of the Per-
son who it to take it. From ten to twenty years
of Age they take a little more than half the
weight of a grain of it; from twenty to thirty,
about the weight of six pence; from thirty to
therefore and ten and upwards, they take of it
to the weight of about a shilling," and never more.

We saw at Siam certain Bird's Neiles which die.
People find to be rarely good for Ragers, and excel-
 lent for the health, when Ginseng is mingled there
with. These Neils are only found in Cachinam
upon vast steep Rocks. Thus they make use of
them. They take a Puller, (such as have the beelh
and bones black are the best,) they put it well.
And then taking the Birds Neils, which have been
flopped in water till they are soft, they tear them
into small scree, and having mingled them
with Ginseng cut into little bits, they put all together
into the body of the Puller, which they boil in a
Pot closely then until it be enough boiled. This
Pot or Potkin is left upon the coals all night, and
in the morning they eat the Puller, the Birds Neils
and the Ginseng without any other Seasoning. Af-
fer they have taken this Remedy Sometimes
they Swear, and if they can they'll sleep upon it.

Nobility is not Hereditary amongst the Siames.
The places given by the Prince make the Nobles,
and the distinction of quality with that people.
Though their Religion allow them Polygamy, yet
few of them have above one or two Wives. As
for
A Voyage to Siam.

Book VI.

Yet for the Ladies, they think the greatest respect that can be shown to them, is for a man to pay his respects to them, and not to look upon them as they put.

The multitude and magnificence of their palaces and their liberality to the subjects and garments of their vassals. They say that in the King's city there are above fourteen thousand Pagodas, and fifty thousand Bridges. What ever is within those Temples is looked upon as Sacred, and to touch any thing from thence is death; about five years ago five Robbers were surprized in a Pagoda, and they were Roasted alive by a gentle fire. They fasted every one of them to a great pile, and then having kindled a fire all round them, they were consumed there till they expired. In their morning prayers which they never miss, they call to mind these things. God and the Law which he hath let them to observe; Their Parents and the benefits which they have received from them; Their Priests and the reverence they owe them; when a Militia would speak to them of our Religion, a Pretender may have free access to them, and that also will dispose them to hear.

The Court of the Siam is well supplied with amusements. They live upon a small exertion, and that country supplies them with all that is necessary for life without much Labour and Industry, and yet they find their time in Idleness. They improve their minds by any Science and are curious about nothing but future contingencies. To know such they not only consult Astrologers, but make use of all other means full of Superstition. The Lord Aungson told me that there is a Cave where the Siamese go and offer Sacrifices to the Spirit that presides in it when they have a mind to know any thing that they are in pain about. After they have left

Book VI. A Voyage to Siam.

The Reverence the Siam have for the King is as far as adoration. The posture wherein they are to be in his presence is a visible mark of it. Nay, more; have for even in the Council which sometimes lasts for their Kings hours, the Ministers sit all the while prostrate before the King; and if any of them chance to faint, he does not rise upon his knees, nor lie up upon the ground, though the Prince commanded him to do till a Curtain be drawn before his Throne. When the King goes abroad, all must withdraw, and no body dares to be in his way; but they who have orders for it, unless he be when he has a mind to throw himself to his people on certain days of Ceremony. Strangers also have Notice before to keep within doors when the King is to go abroad. No man is suffered to come near the Palace whilst he is there.

One day as I was returning from a Pagoda with M-
A Voyage to Siam. Book VI.

a Mandan who had carried me thither in his Balin, our Watermen going along with the Stream, came a little too near the Walls of the Palace. But they soon stood off again when they felt a flower of peaches flying about their ears, which the Soldiers upon the guard that stood in them with Trunks, to make them withdraw.

The King holds Council several times a day. The King holds several Councils daily, and that’s his greatest exercise. None of his Counsellors dare be absent, and if any of them chance to have extraordinary business, or to fall sick, he ought before the hour of Council to speak to the King to be absent. Without that leave no business nor business will excuse him from incuring grievous punishments, if he be able to go for the King never fails to send to know the reason of his absence, and the Officer whom the King finds has Orders to speak to the person himself.

The Prince of the Kings only Daughter, and her Court and Council. The Prince the Kings only Daughter, hath her Court and Council consisting of the Wise of the chief Mandans. She is very good and affable, and in the Government of the Provinces which the King hath given her, shows a great deal of wisdom and moderation; She is only served by Women, and no Man ever saw her neither publicly nor privately. When she goes abroad upon an Elephant, she is shut up in a kind of Chair that hinders her from being seen.

In the Kingdom of Siam the Kings Brothers are preferred before his Children in the Succession to the Crown, but it returns to them after the death of their Uncle. The present King has two Brothers who live with him in the Palace, he hath also, according to the custom of the Orientals, an adoptive Son who accompanies him in all places, and who has peculiar honours rendered unto him.

The Religion of the Siamese is very odd, and cannot be perfectly understood but by the Books that are written in the Raat Language, which is the Learned Language, and hardly understood by any, except some of their Doctors. Nor do these Books neither always agree amongst themselves. This following account of their Religion is the most exact that possibly I could attain to.

The Siamese believe a God, but they have not the same notion of him that we have. By that word God we believe they understand a being perfect after their manner, consisting of Spirit and Body, whose property it is to assist men. That assistance consists in giving them a Law, prescribing them the ways of living well, teaching them the true Religion, and the Sciences that are necessary unto them. The perfections which they attribute unto him are all the moral virtues, polished by him in an eminent degree acquired by many acts, and confirmed by a continual exercise in all the Bodies he hath pass through.

He is free from passions, and feels no motion that can alter his tranquility; but they affirm that before he arrived at that State, he made a prodigious change in his Body by struggling to overcome his Passions, that his blood is become white. He hath the Power to appear when he pleaseth, and able to render himself invisible to the eyes of men; and he hath such wonderful agility, that in a moment he can be in any place of the world he pleaseth.
A Voyage to Siam. Book VI.

He knew all without having ever learnt anything from men, whose Doctor and Master he himself is, and that universal knowledge is inherent in his nature, having possessed it from the instant that he was born. God; it consists not in our doing, in a train of consequences, but in a clear, simple, and intuitive vision, which all arise from a clear representation. To the Perfection of the Law, Virtue, Virtue, and the most hidden secrets of Nature, things past, present, and future, Heaven, Earth, Paradise, Hell, this Universe, which we know, and even what is done in the other World which we know not. He distinctly remembers all that has ever beenfallen to him from the first transmigration of his Soul, even to the last.

His body is infinitely more radiant than the Sun, it is lighter than which is most bright, and by the help of the light that is diffuse, a man rises above it, upon the night, that I may make use of their expression, as a grain of Mustard seed planted in the highest Heavens.

The happiness of that God is not complete, but when he dies, he is born again, for this appears to be more upon the Earth, or in any other object to Mithery. They compare the death to a torch extinct, or to a sleep that removes the light of the Elysium of Life, with this difference that when God dies, he is exempted from them for ever, whereas a man asleep is but fast from them for a certain time.

The reigns of every Deity last not utterly, it is confined to a certain number of years, that is, to fly, until the number of the elect who are to be sanctified by his Merits be accomplished; after which he appears no more in the World but elsewhere.

A Voyage to Siam. Book VI.
A Voyage to Siam.

Book VI.

The Spirits believe in Heaven eight degrees of Beatitude. They have the same things to happen there as upon Earth; and affirm that there are Kings, Princes and People there; that there they wage War, fight Battles, and obtain Victories; that Marriage is held to be sanctified from thence; that in the first, second and third Habitations, the Saints may have Children; that in the fourth in fine, there is no more Conceivance nor Marriage; and if Purity daily enters till one come to the last Heaven, which is perfectly Paradice, called in their Language Nangpan, where the Souls of the Saints and Gods live in perfect Purity and sovereign Felicity.

They say, that in Hell there are Angels who administer Justice, and take care to mark exactly all the bad Actions of Men, examine them after their Death, and with extreme severity punish them for the same. They have a ridiculous Imagination.
In the midst of Sin we see such an image, And whether one be born again under human shape, or under the figure of any Animal, they attribute the Advantages wherewith one comes into the world, as Goodness, Gracefulness, Wit, or Nobility, to the Merit of good Works and natural Defects; as Ugliness, Mutilations of Members, and the like, to the Debauches of this or the other Lives which went before it. All these things, say they, are so many certain Marks which discover to us what Lives men have led before they were born in this state, and this is the Source of that prodigious diversity which appears in their Conditions, their Lives and their Death. Being perplexed with these Errors, they fling what you tell them of Original Sin and the Effects thereof, and they call the Dishonour and Punishment of our first Father a mere Fiction.

The Souls of men that are born again in the World, come from three different Places, from Heaven, from Hell, or out of the Bodies of Animals. They whose Souls come from Heaven are distinguished by some advantageous Signs; they have for their Share, Virtue, Beauty, Health, Wealth, and they are born great Men and Handsome Persons. Upon this Principle these People have great Respect for men of Dignity, or of an Illustrious Extraction, because they look upon them as those who are shortly to be defiled or limited, seeing they have done good Works enough to merit that high Rank of Honour to which they are raised.

They whose Souls come out of the Bodies of other Animals, are left perfect than the former; but far more however, than those that come from Hell.
be remitted either wholly, or in part at least. But if the Sin be grievous, no good Workes can expiate it; he must blie it out by suffering in Hell all the pains that it deserves. And this hath given ground to a Tradition received amongst them, that God neither could, nor as yet can deliver his Brother from the pains of Hell, to which he is condemned.

So, there is not any good Action but what is rewarded in Heaven, nor any Crime but what is punished in Hell. Hence they conclude, that when a man dies upon Earth, he acquires a new Life in Heaven, through he may enjoy the happiness that is due to his good Works; and that the time of his Reward being finished, he dies in Heaven that he may be born again in Hell, if he lie under any considerable sin; that it be only a light fault he is guilty of, he enters again into the world under the shape of some Animal, and having in that state purgatory Jullies, becomes man again as before. In this manner they explain the Metempsycosia, which is one of the fundamental Points of their Religion: so that the Life of Man ispent in continual transfigurations, until he be purified, or hath deferred to be a God. They allow of Spirits; but their Spirits are nothing else but Souls which still inhabit some body until they attain to Vanity or Divinity.

They believe Angels to be corporeal, and as there are different Sexes amongst them, so they may beget Sons and Daughters. These Angels are never finished nor defiled. It is their part only to take continual care of the Preservation of Men, and of the Government of the Universe. They distribute Arbiter into seven Orders or Hierarchies; whereof some are more perfect and noble than others, and that they place them in so many different Heavens. Each part of the world hath one of their Intelligences, that presides over all that is done there. They assign them also to Stars, the Earth, Town, Mountains, Forests, my even to the Wind and Rain. And because they are persuaded that these Angels are constantly busied in examining the conduct of Men, and that they are witnesses of all their Actions, to reward such as are laudable, and virtue of the Morals of their God; it is to these Intelligences, and not to their God, that they are wont to apply themselves in their Neccesities and Miseries; and they thank them for the Favours which they think they have received from them.

They acknowledge no other Devils but the Souls of the wicked, which coming out of Hell where they belong, areest, for a certain time roam about the World, and do no more mischief than they can. Amongst these wretched Spirits, they also reckon Children full-born, Women that die in Child-bed, those that are killed in Duel, or who are guilty of some other Crimes that nature.

They relate strange things of some Ancients, whom they call Pythia, who retaining the difference and understanding the mysteries of the Most High, and the hidden Secrets of Nature. They make God, Silver, and the most precious Metals. The most astonishing Miracle is not above their power. They take all the happier they please, fly in the Air, and in an instant are where they
A Voyage to Siam.

Book VI.

they have a mind to be. But though these extraordinary men might render themselves immortal, because they know the means of prolonging life, yet every thousand years they sacrifice two to God, by continuing themselves upon a funeral pile, all but one, who remains to raise the rest by virtue of his charms. It is no less dangerous than difficult, to meet with these miraculous men; for nothing less than life is risked by the Renounceers. Nevertheless one may learn in the books of the Telepathes, the way that is to be taken, and the means which are to be made use of for attaining to the places where they are.

They reckon the Heaven and Earth to be uncreated and eternal, and cannot conceive how the World could ever have a beginning, or that it should have an end. They have every star and planet to be the habitation of a particular angel. They reckon only seven planets, and the names they give them are also for the seven days of the week, as in the Latin tongue. After all, the stars are fastened to no body, they hang in the air, and have their particular motions.

The Earth is, in their philosophy, not round, but only a flat surface, they divide it into four square parts, which they call Thames. The Waters, by which those four parts are separated, are not navigable, because of their extreme shallowness, hinder the commerce that they might have one with another. The whole Earth is encompassed with an extremely strong and very high wall. On this wall all the secrets of nature are engraved in great characters, and there it is that the wonderful hermits whom I mentioned, learn all the admirable things they know; for they

Book VI.

they essay convey themselves thither with that surprising agility they are endowed with. As to the men of the other three parts of the world, they have a countenance much different from ours: for the inhabitants of the first have a square face, of the second a round, and of the third a triangular.

Whatever diversity of faces there may be amongst the inhabitants of those three several parts of the world, yet in every particular part they look so like another, that it would be hard to tell who is who, if men had not another way to distinguish those with whom they live. The different inclinations that people have for different persons, is the standard of discrimination. Thus a father distinguishes his son from his wife and friend, because he finds the love he has for his son to be quite different from that which he has for his wife or his friend. There is this difference besides between the three other parts and ours, that all good things abound in those without any mixture of evil, and that what things they eat take what relish one pleases by virtue of a certain tree which they invoke when at any time they are in need. Hence it is that no charity nor virtue can be practised there, and because there is no occasion of meriting there, they cannot acquire sanctity, nor receive any punishment, which makes them earnestly desire to be born again in the part which we inhabit, where many occasions of well-doing are to be found. They obtain that favour when they beg it by the merits of God, who hath run over all those places, though they be inaccessible to us.
A Voyage to Siam.

Book VI.

In the middle of the four Parts of the World there is an exceeding high Mountain, called in Sansc. 'Purnaab Pundarivam. It rests upon three precions Stones, every little one, its true, but strong and solid enough to support it. Round this Mountain the Sun and Moon continually turn, and by the daily revolution of their two Luminarys, Day and Night are made. This great Mountain is encompassed by three Rows of higher Hills, of which there is one all of Gold. The great Mountain is inaccessible, because the Waters that surrounds it is not navigable. As for the Mountain of Gold, a fearful Gulf renders the approach to it most difficult. It is true, a rich man heretofore got to it, but it was with extreme danger of being lost, that Abyss, whether all the Waters come and muller, and from whence afterward they gush out to make the Sea and Rivers.

The whole Mass of Earth hath underneath it a vast extent of Waters, which support it as the Sea bears up a Ship. These inferior Waters have a communication with those that are upon the Earth, by means of the Gulf I have been speaking of. An impetuous Wind holds the Waters under the Earth suspended, and the Wind, which exists of it, and has no sede, blowing from all eternity with incredible Violence, drives them continually back, and hinderers them falling. When the time is come that the God of the Sansc. hath foreordained, that he shall cease to reign, then the Fire of Heaven falling upon the Earth shall reduce into Ashes every thing that comes in its way, and the Earth being so purified, shall be restored again to its former state. But you must know

Prolegomen which the Suicide expects before the birth of a new God.
A Voyage to Sham. Book VI

Kill the Trees and Animals, and even contain Mankind. After all these Prodigies, a Fire, which they call Plan Balbanning, descending from Heaven, shall burn the Earth; the Heights thereof shall be made plain by it, and no more inequality will remain therein.

Then the Earth covered over with dust and ashes, shall be purifiled by the blast of a boisterous Wind, which shall carry off these Remains of the World's Confutation; and after that, shall breath once to bestow a Smell as shall draw a Female Angel down from Heaven, that will cut off of this purified Earth. She is to pay dear for that Pleasure: for to expiate it, she shall be obliged to live here below, and never be able to ascend to Heaven again. This Intelligence shall by the Peace she hath eaten, conceive twelve Sons and as many Daughters, who will re-peopled the World. The Men that springing from them shall be ignorant, blockish, not knowing one another at first; and after they shall come to know one another, they shall be ignorant of the Laws, and not come to the knowledge of it till after a long space of time, which they call Capp. To explain the duration of that time, they suppose a deep Well twenty fathoms figure; if there be a grain of Mustard, it yearly thrown into this well, the time that is required to fill it up, is that which they call Capp.

This space of Time being expired, a God shall be born again, who shall teach the doctrine of the Ignorance wherein they were, by teaching them the true Religion, discovering to them the Virtues that are to be practiced, and the Vices to be shunned, and instructing them in all Sciences. He will give them Scriptures that shall explain their things, and the holy Law that for a long time had been blotted out of the Minds of Men, shall be of new again graven in them by the Cares and Memors of that Deity. This is the only Employment which they think fitable to the Dignity of God, whilst he is upon Earth; for they reckon it below him to mind the Government of the World, to take care of Men and Beasts, and to produce all that the Universe brings forth: and in this manner it is that the World shall be from time to time renewed to all Eternity.

I thought it fit to premise all these things before I came to speak of Sammonshbodin (so the Siamese call the God whom at present they adore) because they are necessary to the understanding of his History. That History, after all, is a monstrous mixture of Christianity and the most ridiculous Fables. It is at first supposed that Sammonshbodin was born God by his own virtue; and that immediately after his Birth, without the help of any Mother, he acquired by a mere glance of his Mind, a perfect knowledge of all things relating to Heaven, the Earth, Paradise, Hell, and the most impenetrable Secrets of Nature; that at the same time he remembered all that ever he had done in the different Lives he had led; and that after he had taught the People those great Matters, he left them written in Books, that Posterity might be the better for them.

In these Books he reports of himself, that being become God, one day he desired to manifest his Divinity to Men by some extraordinary Prodigy.
A Voyage to Siam.

Book VI.

He then sette under a Tree called Tae pro, who for that reason the Siamees reference as some furcled thing, and looked upon it as a happy & pleasant place for the places where it grows, being persuaded that it would be a great sin to do the Tree hurt to that Tree. He adds, that presently he found himself carried up into the Air in a throne of shining with Gold and precious Stones, which came out of the Earth in the place where he was and that at the same instant Angels coming down from Heaven, rendered him the Honours and Adoration that were due unto him. His Book Thesaurum and his Followers could not without extreme Jealousie behold the Glory and Magnificence that environed him. They conspired his Ruin, and having stirred up the Beasts against him, engaged him in a War. Though he was alone, he was not terrified by that multitude of Enemies, he refuted all their Attempts without being shaken, and by virtue of his good Words which defended him, the Beasts they dared not him, were changed into so many Flowers, which far from hurting him, served only to decorate him in Honour. In the mean time he confounded that the brunt of the Battle, when he was most in danger, it was but in vain that he had recourse to the good works he had done in keeping the Nairf Commanders of the Law, which he had not been sufficient to defend him in this present Necessity. But being armed with the true Command, which he had invisibly observed and which enjoins the practice of Charity towards Men and Beasts, he easily triumphed over his Enemies, and in this manner he obtained that Victory. The Female Guardian-dagger

The Fowry, the Talisman, that from the time he was desired to be God, he had returned into the World five hundred and fifty times under various forms; that in every Regeneration, he had been always the Chief, and as it were, Prince of the Animals under whose shape he was born; that many times he had given his Life for his Subjects, and that being a Monkey, he had delivered a Town from a horrible Monster that waited for him; that he had been a most potent King, and that seven days before he obtained the Sovereign Dominions of the Universe, he had retired in imitation of some Anchorage, with his Wife and two Children into remote Solitudes; that there he was dead to

The Earth (for we have already distinguished two Seas amongst the Angles) coming to him, he first adored him, then turning towards Those and his Adversaries, he made known to them that Siamakakotiam was really become God. She told them, that she had been a Witches of his good Works; and to convince them of that she showed them her own Hair all drooping with the Waters that he poured out in the beginning of his good Actions. Hence came the superstitious Custom of the Siamees of shedding Water in the beginning of their good works, whereas we have spoken several times already, and which the Siamees religiously observe since that time. In first, he exhorted them to render him the Adoration that he deserved; but finding them to be hardened and obstinately resolved not to hearken to her Remonstrances, he squeezed her weep, and prevailed on them an Ocean of Water, wherein they were all drowned.

It also found written in the Books of Siamakakotiam, that from the time he was desired to be God, he had returned into the World five hundred and fifty times under various forms; that in every Regeneration, he had been always the Chief, and as it were, Prince of the Animals under whose shape he was born; that many times he had given his Life for his Subjects, and that being a Monkey, he had delivered a Town from a horrible Monster that waited for him; that he had been a most potent King, and that seven days before he obtained the Sovereign Dominions of the Universe, he had retired in imitation of some Anchorage, with his Wife and two Children into remote Solitudes; that there he was dead to
A Voyage to Siam.

Book VI.

The World and his Passions in such a degree that without being moved he suffered a Beesmen, who had a mind to try his Patience and carry away his Son and Daughter, and torment them before his face. Nay his mortification went a great deal farther, for he even gave his Wife a poor Man that beggred an Alms, and having put out his own eyes he sacrificed himself by distributing his flesh amongst the Beasts, to play the hunger that prevailed them. From thence they took occasion again to find fault with the Christian Religion, which enjoys not Men to comfort and still Death in their necessities. These are the rare actions which the Tagalans in their Sermons propound to the people for imitation, and the examples they make use of to encline them to virtue.

There is a record of Tewahhath in the same Book, in which extraordinary nor Fabulous. There we learn that he was always born again with his Brother Sennomahadon, in the same kind as he was: but still inferior in Dignity, because Sennomahadon was the Prince of the Animals whole shape he took. But Tewahhath aspiring also to Divinity, and not endeavouring any thing above himself, would never submit to his Brother. On the contrary, he endeavors by continual Revolts to disturb his Reign, and omitted nothing that he might destroy him of the Empire, whereas, at length he succeeded in some manner; for he killed him when both of them were Apes. What we saw during our abode in Siam, did but too much confirm us how far the People are infatuated with such Fables. A young Church-man maintaining a position of Divinity in presence of my Lord Ambassador, some Tagalans came thither out.
In the new Doctrine which he published the 

Christianized the 

Religion so much as to make it look like another Religion in 

points. They differ however, in that 

heretics take 

law more seriously than that of 

Samaritanism; the Law which 

Samaritans hold for it allows a great liberty of killing and 

eating Animals, tho’ the use of them be unlawful, and 
criminal. From the Doctrine of 

Tertullian, as it is derived from the Church of Rome, for 

they look upon them as so many threats springing 

from our Religion, and that confirms them 

the more in their opinions.

After all the outrages that 

Tertullian had done 
to his Brother without any respect to Nature or 

Hellenism, he was not punished. So far as I know, 

Tertullian himself relates that after he 

became a Christian, he saw that wicked Brother of his 
in the deepest place of Hell. He was in the 

Abode of the Damned, in the place 

where the greatest Offenders are tormenting, and 

there by a terrible punishment, he expired, all 

the finer that he had committed, and especially the 

injuries he had done to me. Explaining afterwards 

the pains which 

Tertullian was made to 

suffer, he says that he was subjected to a Crook with 

great nails, pitch piercing his hands and feet, 

put him to extreme pain, that on his head he 
had a Crown of Thorns, that his Body was 

full of
A Voyage to Siam.  

Book VI.  

full of wounds, and to compass his Misery, the Internal place burnt him without concerning of him. So fast a speed he moved him to compassion, he forgot all the wrongs his Brother had done him, and could not see him in that condition without taking a resolution to help him. He proposed to him then these three words to be assented to, Pray, Trust, Suffer: sacred and mysterious words for which the Siamen have a profound veneration; and whereas the first signifies God, the second, the world of God, and the third the Intercessor of God; promising him, that if he would accept to ease and reasonable condition, to deliver him from all the pains to which he was condemned. 

Tsenabat, contented to adore the first two words, but he never would adore the third, because it signified a Priest or Intercessor of God, professed the Siamen were faithful Men that deferred no respect to God. To punish him for that Pride, he shall suffer and will suffer for a great many years to come.  

There be many things that keep the Sianese at a distance from the Christian Law, yet one may say, nothing makes them more assured that in their Scriptures, they are persuaded that their Religion and ours, making them believe that Jesus Christ, is the very same with that Tsenabat mentioned in their Scriptures, they are persuaded that being we are the Disciples of the one, we are also the followers of the other, and the fear they have of falling into Hell with Tsenabat, if they follow his Doctrine, suffer them not to be heard to the proposition that are made to them of embracing Christianity. That which most confirmeth in them prejudice, is that we adore the Image of our Crucified Saviour, which plainly represents the punishment of Tsenabat. So when we would explain to them the Articles of our Faith, they take us always up short, saying that they do not need our instructions, and that they know already better than we do, what we have a mind to tell them.

But it is time to return to Sannsugadawi, whole Story, we have interspersed, he had him over the World, declaring to Mankind good and evil, and teaching them the true Religion, which he himself wrought that he might leave it to Posterity. He had even gained several Disciples, who in the condition of Priests were to make a particular Prophecy of imitating him, in wearing a habit like to his, and in observing the Rules that he gave them when at length, he attained to the fourth and second year of his age, which was also the Age of his Mortal, which hereafter he lived as we have already said. One day, as he sat in the middle of his Disciples teaching them, he saw the same Monitor in Shape of a Pig, running with incredible Fury, and he made no doubt but that it had a designing to be revenged; knowing then that the time of his departure out of the World drew nigh, he foretold it to his Disciples, and shortly after having eaten a piece of the Pig which he had seen, he was taken with a violent Cholick which killed him.

His Body ascended to the right Heaven, which is properly Paradise called Nirvapassu, it is no more subject to miseries and pain, but there enjoys perfect bliss. For that reason it will never be born again, and that is the thing they call being annihilated.
think it a most laudable action, and excellent
virtue to do good to the Talaunos, and that thine
Cloaths and the Beads which they receive from
them have the power to cure Diseases. They
imagine also that in their Books there is a divine
virtue, and that if one understand it and know
how to use the words of them, he might work
great wonders. And therefore of the three ways
of working Miracles, the first is to understand
how to make use of the word of God; the second,
to be instructed in the Doctrine of the
Anchoritae, and the third is the afinity of
Devils. This last, however, they condemn, but
they mightly approve of the two former, becau-
sing that they alone have these admirable fac-
cors.

For the proof of their Religion, they reckon
false Oracles up several Fables, which pass among them for whereby the
so many authentic Miracles. And these are some of
the chief of them.

1. In the Kingdom of Ayutthia, where the
Relick of Samaumalston is kept, this Boome par-
tly changed into several Monials, and partly in
their natural state shews with an extraordinary
brightness.

2. In the same Kingdom there is a little Ille
in the middle of a River; where there is a Tem-
ple of their God, this little Ille, let the water be
never so high, even when the highest places are
overswept, remains dry. They add, that the
Pretual which are offered to God by calling them
into the River, according to the Custom of that

Counter.
A Voyage to Smyrna.

Book VI.

300.

Country, run along with the Stream, until arriving at the Isle, they stop there, and will go no further.

3. In Storms at Sea, when Seamen are in danger of being cast away, they throw a Ring into the Sea, with an intention to offer it to the Temple of the Gods, and all of a sudden the Sea becomes calm, and the Ship is out of danger.

4. Upon the Borders of the Kingdom of Persia, there is a little hill, where they have a Tradition that God was often present. A vast multitude of People go thither yearly in Pilgrimage, and the top of it is very narrow, yet it holds all the people upon it, and is never full of Pilgrims.

5. They also say, that on the top of that little hill, there is a great Treasure of Gold, Silver, and other precious things, which the Pilgrims offer to God, when they come there. They tell how an Army of Chinese having one day carried away that Treasure, was next day wholly destroyed, and the Riches carried back by Angels to the place where it was before.

6. The top of the little hill is altogether exposed to the Weather, and heat of the Sun, yet there is always a shade upon it; that even at noon, guards the people from the excursive heat which they would suffer there without that.

7. In the Town of Babylon there is an Idol all of Gold: they pretend that that is a Miraculous Statue, and that if when Rain is wanting, it is carried into the Fields, as usually it is, immediately Rain falls in great abundance.

8. In another Town which is called Cambyses, there is, as they say, a Lake, wherein to this day there is to be seen a living Fish, which hath but the half of its Body, and the manner how that Prodigy was wrought is remarkable. Herefore a Holy Man lived in that Town; who having a boiled Fish preferred before him, he ate but one half of it, and threw the other into the Lake declaring that it might live. His wish was granted him, in consideration of his great merit; for at this very present the same half Fish is still alive in the Lake.

It would be too tedious here to relate all their other Rarities, we shall only take notice that building upon an infinite number of Prodigies of this Nature, in disputing with us, they challenge us to show some Miracles in confirmation of the Doctrine we Preach. They brag to us of certain Beads and Stone-statues, which they believe were herefore Men, and by a divine Virtue rendered insensible. They have also, as they say, many ancient Works, made by the hand of Angels. In conclusion all the Effects which we attribute to Magic, they take to be so many amazing wonders, and they are proud that they alone have the art to do them.

There are certain Telepomps amongst them who have embraced a State of life called Pipian. Nothing can be more absurd: they observe perpetual silence, always applied to the Contemplation of Divine things, and they have the Reputation of being great Saints.

The same believe that they continually converse with Angels, that what is most admirable in nature, is always present to their mind, and that their

p. 300-301
A Voyage to Siam. Book VI.

Eyes pierce even into the most hidden Mists where they clearly see, Gold, Silver, all Metals and all Sorts of Precious Stones.

As to manners and the way of living, a Christian cannot enjoy anything more perfect than what their Religion prescribes to them. It commands them to do good, and not only prohbit bad actions, but also every sinful desire, thought and intention. And that makes them so that their Law is impracticable, or at least, very hard to be kept as it ought to be, and indeed they think that they shall all go to Hell.

Their whole Law is comprehended in ten Commandments as ours is; but it is much severer, for besides that with them neither necessity nor any other Circumstance excuses a Man that fail many things which among Christians are only at perfection and Councils, pass with them for indispensable Precepts.

The use of all intoxicating Liquors are forbidden to them. They are not so much as permitted to taste Wine whatsoever need they may be in, or whatsoever occasion may press them, and they are extremely scandalized when they see Christian Priests drink of it. They cannot without a sin kill any living Creature, nay it is a Crime to go a Hunting, to strike a Beast, and to do it hurt any manner of way. The reason they give for that is that Beasts having life as well we, are sensible of [p. 303] pain as well as we, and since we are not willing that any body should hurt us, it is not reasonable that we should hurt them. Nay they accuse us of ingratitude, because we put to death innocent Creatures who have rendered us so many Services. For that reason they are obliged to provide Charity not only towards Men, but towards Beasts also, and to assist them in their necessities. They have so great a respect to their Scriptures, that they dare not trust them in our hands, no nor explain their Law to us, lest that exposing it to our division, we might be guilty of some irreverence, and the sin of that be punished to them. They often upbraid us with the way we carry holy Images, and read the holy Scriptures, as being not respectful enough. After all, the Taleemun who are their Priests, Mens and Doctors are looked upon as the true followers of God. They have little Commerce with the World, never think a Lay-man no not the King. And that's the reason why it offends the Siamese to see the European Priests use familiarity with Seniors.

The Taleemun go every Morning a begging, and the opinion People have of their Virtue makes every one give them somewhat. And indeed the most essential part of Morality which they Preach, is that to be ﬁred, men must cease or repair Pagods, and above all things abstain the Taleemuns.

The Lay-men have eight principal Commandments which consist, 1. In adoring God, his Word, and those who imitate his Virtues. 2. Not to Steal. 3. Not to drink Wine, nor any Liquor that intoxicates. 4. Not to lie nor to deceive any body. 5. Not to kill Men nor Beasts. 6. Not to commit Adultery. 7. To fast on Holy-days. 8. Not to labour on those days. These are the Duties which the Priests explain to the People, and instruct them in, in their Sermons.
The Monasteries of the Tala-pins are so many Seminaries where Youth are bred. Thither are all Children of Quality sent, as soon as they are capable of Instruction, and whilst they continue there, they are made to lead a very austere life. They are called Nuns; and have their particular Rules and Precepts, which consists in wearing a yellow Garment, and having their Head and Eyebrows flaved twice a Month, the fourteenth and twenty fifth of the Moon, to fast those two days, and also three other Holy-days, which happen the fifteenth, twenty third, and last day of the Moon, to eat only twice a day, in the Morning and at Noon, without permission to take a bit of Food more till next day, so here no Commerce with any Woman, never to sing a Song, nor to hear those that do sing, nor to play upon any Instruments, to avoid public Shows and Rejoicings, nor to use Perfumes, nor to love Money, which they are not so much as to touch, far less to hoard it up, not to take pleasure in the taste of what they eat, and to divert their thought from that; which is the reason that several of them mingle somewhat with what is given them, to render it less agreeable; in fine to honour their Priests, to give them the hand, and to sit always below them.

The Tala-pins lead a more austere life; for besides that they have all the obligations of Layman and of the youth whom they breed, they have over and above more than forementioned rules proper to their Station, whereof these are the chief. To go twice every day to the Temple Morning and Evening to lay their Prayers, to be wholly covered, never to touch Women, not to speak to them
A Voyage to Siam.

Book VI.

A voyage to Siam.

had to hand, say, and not to look upon them when they meet them in the streets, to walk with great modesty, looking downwards and not turning the head, to carry always a Fan and to cover their face with it, to hinder their eyes from wandering, never to consent to any ill thoughts, not to dress their own Victuals, but to take such food as is given them, to live on Alms which they beg about the Town, but not to enter into houses, never to walk at doors longer than an Ox is a drinking, to teach the Law to their Disciples and to the People, to mortify themselves and do penance a whole year, part whereof consists in fasting about fifteen days in the Month of February, exposed to the Dew of Heaven in the middle of the open Fields; to confest their Sins one to another, to halt three Months in the year, June, August, and September, to eat but once a day all that time, which they call their great Fasts, and nevertheless to preach every day, to say over a kind of Chapels made up of an hundred and fourscore Beads, and divided by a stone to salute any Layman, to be merciful and mild towards all People, not to be angry, and never to strive any body, never to have the head covered especially in the Temples, not to sit but upon a certain Leather seat which they carry about with them, particularly in places where Women sit, never to lie abroad out of the Monastery, and not to be seen one of it alone; To have but one habitation, not to play at any Game, not to receive the money that is given them, but by the hand of him that serves them for a Steward, and to employ it in good works, as paying the Poor's Debts, and redeeming Slaves, to lodge Pilgrims, and to do them all the good they can to be.
be sincere and true, and when they must affirm or deny any thing, to say only it is so or it is not so. In this never to suffer them. Mind the least doubt about their Religion.

The Talogons make frequent discourses to the People to exhort them to the Practice of Virtue, and particularly of Charity towards Men and Beasts. He that Preaches, sits, after the manner of the Courtiers, upon a little Theatre or Stage, covered with Carpet, and very high above the Audience. When the People are gathered together, he begins and reads a sentence of Scripture, with a modest and grave Countenance; looking always down with his Eyes, and using no gestures, then he unfolds the Fabulous Mysteries of that Book, and draws from thence some Moral Doctrine for the instruction of his Audience, making use of Metaphors, Parables, and above all of comparisons taken from natural things, as it is the custom of the Orientals. The People fix their eyes, and listen with much reverence and attention, the Men being on the one side, and the Women on the other. The rest of the Talogons are at the President's side, but separated from the People, and sitting on a half pace. All the hearers have their hands joined, and at each of the President's words they bow their heads, and the word of God, rest upon them. They have like us a kind of Sunday every seventh day, which they spend in Houses and Prayers, besides some other more solemn Holy-days, which last three days, and which are celebrated sometimes in one Pueblo, and sometimes in another, with an extraordinary concourse of People. The Women are the most so-

A Voyage to Siam. Book VI.

Fiction to go to those meetings of Piety. During that time they Preach from six of the Clock in the Morning to a Clock at Night, fresh Preachers succeeding one another, and Preaching six whole hours by turns. These long discourses are not tedious to the Audience, who always listen with reverence without coughing or turning the head.

And thus you have what I could learn of the Siam Religion, which till now has been so unknown in Europe. But if one do but in the least examine what we have said of it, he'll find so many things that have some resemblance with the Christian doctrine, that it may be easily judged the Gospel hath been herebefore Preached to that Nation, which in progress of time hath been altered and corrupted by the ignorance of their Priests.

I can say nothing in particular as to the present State of Christianity in Siam. It is strange that the Gospel should make so small Progress amongst people, who are naturally and carefully cultivated, who daily see the Majesty of our Ceremonies, so proper for giving an Idea of our Mysteries, who besides have no vice that may make them dislike our Maxims, and who have to great an esteem for the Talogons, because they make professors of an ancient life. This might make men think that they had something of blackheads and rubbifies, or the gentle carriage and pleasant Repartees of the Ambassadors that were in Prome, made it not apparent that they are Wit and Polite. But it belongs not to us to pry into the secret Judgments of God. Let us only make fervent Prayers to that Father of mercies, that he would illuminate
THE TABLE.
The First Book.

His Father parted from Macao, December 5
1681, in a Dutch Ship, and arrived in Hol-
land in October 1682.
The King orders six Jesuits, Mathematicians, to be sent
to China.
The preparations for their departure.
They are admitted into the Royal Academy of Sciences.
Letters instructions are given unto them for the improve-
ment of Arts and Sciences.
The various instruments they take with them for their
Observations.
The arrival of the Chevalier de Chaumont at Breit.
The King sends the Jesuits Patent of Mathematica-
ment.
A fleet is joined to the first Ship.
The King ordered his Ambassadors at Lisbon to de-
mand full parts for the Jesuits from the Kingdom
of Portugal.
The Letter of Father Le Cheinie to Father Verbiel at
Pekin.
Monsieur de Vaudricourt made Captain of the
Ship.
The Ambassador goes on board the Oyseau.
Departure from the Road of Breit.
The Gullet is a very strait passage from the Road of
Breit to the Sea.
His the Councilmen and Jesuits pass their time in the
\[ sic, i.e. p. 308-X3r \]
The TABLE.

The Voyage.

| Column under the Torrid Zone. |
| The Direction of the whole Ships Company towards the Holy Virgin. |
| In sight of the Isle of Madera. |
| In sight of the Isle of Palms. |
| The Ships of the South part of the Heavens are not seen. |
| Plenty of Fish about the Equinoctial Line. |
| The way of catching Porpoises. |
| The kind of Porpoises is hot. |
| Porpoises devour one another. |
| A description of the Shark. |
| Sucking-fish called the Seamen Pilot-fish. |
| The Bonito pursues the Flying-fish. |
| Extraordinary Phenomena observed during the Voyage. |
| The manner how Spouts are formed. |
| Which are dangerous to be met with. |
| Spouts of another kind. |
| Extraordinary Rain-bows to be seen at Sea. |
| Phenomena that are to be seen in the waters of the Sea. |
| Lighets that come out of the Sea in the night time. |
| An English Ship made off at Sea. |
| Marks to know the manner of the Cape of Good Hope. |
| Droves Birds to be seen at Sea in approaching to the Cape of Good Hope. |

The Second Book.

A warning being forced upon a Rock, as the Ship was coming to Anchor, 44.

Our

The TABLE.

Our Ship came to an Anchor about four leagues off Land. 45.

The Dutch land to know from whence our Ships. 46.

The Ambassador sent to supplement the Governor of the Cape. 46.

The Jesuits visit the Governor of the Cape. 47.

The Climate of the Cape of Good-Hope is very temperate. 48.

The Jesuits are extremely well received by the Dutch. 49.

The Circuits of New-Aike Van Rheeden. 50.

The Description of a lovely Garden where the Dutch East-India Company have on the Cape of Good Hope. 51.

All Dutch Ships are ordered to touch at the Cape of Good-Hope. 52.

The Ambassador and Countess General inspect many Curiosities. 53.

We began to make our Observations. 53.

A detailed Observation. 54.

Several Observations concerning the Southern Stars. 55.

An Interview between the Ambassador and Countess General. 55.

The Eruption of the first Satellites of Jupiter observed. 56.

The difference of Meridians between the Cape of Good-Hope and Paris. 58.

Advantages that may be drawn from the observations made at the Cape. 59.

The Governor sends severally Prefects to the Jesuits. 60.

Curious Fish brought from Japan. 61.

We embarked in order to sail. 61.

What care was taken of the Catholics at the Cape. 62.

The Smelting of the Catholics on the Cape upon our arrival. 62.

The Jesuits are supplied with administering the Sacrament. 62.
The TABLE.

The Dutch settling on the Cape. 63
The different Animals that are to be found on the Cape. 64
A prodigious Elephant. 65
A property of the Rhinoceros. ibid.
Several sorts of Fish at the Cape. 66
Golden Mines on the Cape. 67
A Translation of a Latin relation of the Places about the Cape. ibid.
The Manners of the Inhabitants of the Cape. 68
Their Arms. 69
Their Food. 69
Their kindnes as to matters of Religion. ibid.
Their Opinion as to their own way of living, and that of Strangers. ibid.
The Apparel of Men and Women. 70
Their Moral Virtue. 71
The manner how they punish Crimes. ibid.
The knowledge they have of the Heavens and Natural things. ibid.
They are so accustomed to Liberty, that they cannot live under the least constraint. ibid.
The Hunters live in the Woods, and the Shepherds in Cottages: A description of these Cottages. 72
The Namaqnas live in Villages, and are polite than the rest.
Their Music and Instruments. 73
Their way of Dancing. ibid.
The Strength, Courage and Manners. 74
The Ulinghas are given to Thieving. ibid.
The different Nations discovered by the Dutch. ibid.
The Seafowl. ibid.
The Governor of the Cape made a Progress up into the Country. 75
The danger he was in of losing his life. ibid.

The TABLE.

Their Music, Instruments and Dancing. 76
Their Apparel. 77
The Misfortunes of those Insolent People, and the small hopes there is of converting them. 79
Our departure from the Cape of Good-Hope. 80
Navigators ought to be always on their Guard about the thirty sixth Degree South Latitude. 81
Necessary Remarks for those who are bound to the Indies from the Cape. 82
Prayers made for the obtaining of fair Weather. 83
Sackcloth amongst the Ships Company. ibid.
The Patience and Piety of the Sea men. 84
God grants fair Weather at the Intercession of the Blessed Virgin. 85
A Caution not to be neglected in that course. ibid.
The Trial are three pretty low Islands. 86
The Wind being contrary, we betook our selves to Prayers again. 87
The Seamen of St. Malo show a particular Devotion. ibid.
God's special Protection of our Ship. 88
The Perplexity we were in before we came to the Isle of Java. 89

The Third Book.

A Relation of the Life of Java. 91
A Considerable Misfortune to the Hydrographical and Geographical Charts. ibid.
Breezy Gale on Sumatra at certain parts of the day. 94
The danger the Ship was in in the Straights. 108
Extraordinary Thunder and Lightning at Java and Sumatra. 95
The Javaneers came on Board in their little Boats. 108
The Road of Bantam. 97
The TABLE.

A Remedy for the Land-Evil.
The Chevalier de Fourbin is sent to the Governor of Bantam.
He found the Maligne and returned on Board with the Lieutenant of the Frigate.
He had received orders to the Maligne went before us on the road to Bantam.
Mutual Pretexts of the Governor of Bantam and the Captain of the Frigate.
He was received by the Governor with all possible honors.
The Chevalier de Fourbin is sent to Bantam.
We went from the Road of Bantam, and found away for Batavia.
Several revolutions that have happened in the Kingdom of Bantam.
The King of Bantam having resigned the Crown to his Son, attempts to render it again.
The young Sultan is lodged by his Father, his Affiiance from the Dutch.
General Spelman finds a strong Affiiance to Sultan Agui lodged.
Sultan Agui guard by the Dutch.
The English and French have the Town by the King of Bantam in Order.
The Council of the General of Batavia to the Ambassador.
The Jesuits land at Batavia to make Observations.
The King Receives them from the Officers of the Dutch East-India Company.
A Description of the Garden of the late General Spelman.
The French Jesuits go to see Father Dominic Fucchi.

The Fourth Book.

The Ambassador embarks in the Balcon of the King of Siam.
A description of the House built on the River for to receive him.
How the King of Siam receives the Ambassador of Neighbouring Princes.
How the Ambassadors of Independent Kings are received at Siam.
The King of Siam orders the Lord Conffiance to assist.
The Table.

Kings of England and Portugal. 185
The King of Siam goes abroad publicly to visit a Pagod. 187
The King's Progress from Siam to Louvo. 190
The Funeral of a great Talaipoin. 191
The description of a Palace of the King of Siam, built after the European manner. 193
The King gives the Ambassadors an Audience at Louvo. 195
The Elephants have five Tails in each Foot. 197
A description of Louvo. 198
The King of Siam gives a private Audience to the French Jesuits. Ibid.
The French Harangue presented to the King. 200

The Fifth Book.

The Mourns make a Procession to celebrate the Memory of their Prophet. 215
The map of taking and taming Elephants. 216
The Harangue of the Lord Conclave to the King of Siam. 216
The King of Siam answers the Lord Conclave. 222
The Observations that keep the King of Siam from his Religion. 222
The Lord Conclave his Reply to the King of Siam. 222
Observations about changing of Religion. 223
A Character of the King of Siam. 224
We begin to make observations at Louvo. 230
Observations about the variation of the Needle. 231
The King of Siam observes the Jesuits an Eclipse of the Moon in his Palace. Ibid.
The King of Siam invites the Ambassadors to see Elephant hunting. 232
A description of that hunting. 233
The
The Table.

The King of Siam demands the Chevalier de Fournon, 234
from the Ambassador.
The Refusals prepare to observe in the King's Presence at
Thecasslembe.
They begin the Observation of the Eclipse before the
King. 226
The King passes several Questions of Astronomy to the
Tøjus. 228
The way of catching Elephants. 246
The Ambassador takes his Audience of Leave of
Mania of Siam. 248
Departure from Siam. 251
The King of Siam's Letter is carried on board the
Olyfane. 252
Departure from the Bar of Siam. 254
News from an English Ship outward bound. 256
Passing out from the Bay of the Cape. 258
The south line at the first Meridian. 259

The Sixth Book.

The Situation of the Kingdom of Siam. 264
A description of the Kingdom of Siam. 264
The Habits of the Siamese. 266
A Character of the Siamese and their Manners. 267
The property of Belze and Artesa. 268
The property of Tea. 269
The manner of preparing Tea. 269
What Ginfang is and its virtues. 270
The way of preparing Ginfang. 270
Some particulars concerning certain Birds Neft, 271
Various customs of the Siamese. 271
The Customs of the Siamese to know things future. 272
The Renovations the Siamese have for their King. 273

The Table.

The King holds Council several times a day. 274
The King's Daughter has her Court and Council. Ibid.
The Kingdom of Siam defends not from Father to
Son. Ibid.
What the Siamese believe of their God. 275
The knowledge of the God of the Siamese. 276
Wherein consists his happiness. Ibid.
Men may become Gods. 277
The Siamese acknowledge a perpetual state of Satiety.
Ibid.
The Siamese believe Heaven and Hell. 278
What the Siamese believe of Hell. Ibid.
What they believe of Heaven. 279
Upon a Religious account the Siamese repulse those who
are any ways Eminent by the advantages of body, mind,
or fortune. 280
They have the punishment and guilt of Sin. 281
They believe A yet is to be corporal. 282
They acknowledge no other Devils but demons Sams.
283
They tell strange stories of certain Authorites. Ibid.
Their Beliefs touching the Eternity of the World. 284
The Earth in the opinion of the Siamese is flat and
square. Ibid.
The System of the Siamese. 286
Prognostics which the Siamese expect before the birth of
a new God. 287
Sommonokhodham is the last God of the Siamese. 289
Others which the Tartars relate of their God. Ibid.
Thevarin Sommonokhodham younger Brother under
War against him. 290
Sommonokhodham afflicted by the F orde tertiarly Angel
of the Earth triumphs over his Enemies. 291
To Pepere which the Tartars call of Sommonokhod-
ham. Ibid.

Thavilla.
The Table.

Thevathat killed his Brother Sommonokhdorn when they were Ages. 292
Thevathat makes a Schism and declares himself against his Brother. 293
Thevathat conspiring to be God is with his Followers deprived of many knowledges. Ibid.
The Talapins persuade the Siamefs that the Christian Religion is taken out of the Law which Sommonokhdorn taught them. 295
Thevathat is punished in Hell for having persecuted his Brother. Ibid.
The Talapins take the Siamefs off from turning Christians, by persuading them that Jesus Christ is Thevathat the Brother of their God. 296
Wherein confis the Annihilation of the Siamefs God. 297
The Siamefs with great reverence preserve the hair and picture of their God. 298
Pulp Oracles whereby the Siamefs Authorize their Religion. 299
The Law of the Siamefs contains ten very severe Precepts. 302

FINIS.